

# COMPLETE GERMAN

## MASTER COURSE

*MAXIMILLIAN SCHMIDT  
ANNA MÜLLER*

**1.**

**GERMAN  
GRAMMAR**



# Contents

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>xi</b>
<b>Abbreviations</b>	<b>xv</b>
<b>Chapter 1 Pronunciation</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Vowels	1
1.2 Diphthongs	3
1.3 Consonants	3
1.4 Stress	7
1.5 Regional variants	8
<b>Chapter 2 Spelling</b>	<b>9</b>
2.1 Indicating vowel length	9
2.2 Use of the Umlaut	9
2.3 Use of capital letters	10
2.4 Use of the hyphen	10
2.5 The new spelling	11
2.6 The alphabet	12
<b>Chapter 3 Punctuation</b>	<b>13</b>
3.1 Commas	13
3.2 Colons with direct speech	15
3.3 Inverted commas/quotation marks	15
3.4 Exclamation marks	16
<b>Chapter 4 Case</b>	<b>17</b>
4.1 Case endings on nouns	18
4.2 Other uses of the nominative case	20
4.3 Other uses of the accusative case	20
4.4 The genitive case	21

4.5	Other uses of the dative case	22
4.6	Nouns in apposition	23
4.7	Order of cases in paradigms	24
<b>Chapter 5 Articles and other determiners</b>		<b>25</b>
5.1	The definite article	25
5.2	Other determiners inflected like <b>der/die/das</b>	29
5.3	The indefinite article	30
5.4	Other determiners inflected like <b>ein</b>	32
5.5	Indefinite pronouns used as determiners	32
<b>Chapter 6 Nouns</b>		<b>33</b>
6.1	Gender of nouns	33
6.2	Pluralization of nouns	37
6.3	Diminutization of nouns	41
6.4	Names of towns	42
6.5	Names of countries	44
6.6	Feminizing agents	44
6.7	Adjectival nouns	45
6.8	Compound nouns	47
6.9	Nouns in apposition (see 4.6)	48
<b>Chapter 7 Pronouns</b>		<b>49</b>
7.1	Personal pronouns	49
7.2	Possessives	58
7.3	Reflexive pronouns	60
7.4	Demonstrative pronouns	63
7.5	Interrogative pronouns	63
7.6	Relative pronouns	64
7.7	Indefinite pronouns	69
<b>Chapter 8 Adjectives</b>		<b>75</b>
8.1	Rules for inflection	76
8.1.1	The <b>der/die/das</b> (weak) endings	76
8.1.2	The <b>ein/eine/ein</b> (mixed) endings	76
8.1.3	The unpreceded adjectival (strong) endings	77
8.1.4	Adjectival endings after indefinite pronouns	78
8.1.5	Indeclinable adjectives	78
8.2	Comparative of adjectives and adverbs	79
8.3	Superlative of adjectives and adverbs	81
8.4	Predicate adjectives followed by a prepositional object	83

<b>Chapter 9 Adverbs</b>	<b>86</b>
9.1 Adverbs that are also adjectives	86
9.2 Comparative and superlative of adverbs	87
9.3 Intensifying adverbs	87
9.4 Adverbs of time	88
9.5 Adverbs of place and direction	100
9.6 Adverbs of manner and degree	102
9.7 Interrogative adverbs	102

<b>Chapter 10 Verbs</b>	<b>105</b>
10.1 Formation of tenses	106
10.1.1 The present tense	106
10.1.2 The future tense	111
10.1.3 The imperative	113
10.1.4 The imperfect tense	115
10.1.5 The perfect tense	120
10.1.6 The pluperfect tense	127
10.1.7 The future perfect tense	128
10.1.8 The conditional tense	128
10.1.9 The conditional perfect tense	129
10.2 Modal auxiliary verbs	131
10.2.1 Double infinitive constructions	135
10.2.2 Modals used with perfective infinitives	138
10.3 The subjunctive	138
10.3.1 The subjunctive I	139
10.3.2 The subjunctive II	141
10.4 The passive	145
10.5 The infinitive	151
10.5.1 Characteristics of the infinitive	151
10.5.2 Rules for the use of <b>zu</b> with infinitives	152
10.5.3 Use of <b>um ... zu</b> before infinitives	153
10.5.4 Double infinitive constructions (see 10.2.1)	154
10.5.5 The infinitive used as a noun	154
10.6 Participles	154
10.6.1 Present participles	154
10.6.2 Past participles	155
10.6.3 Use of present and past participles in extended adjectival phrases (see 7.6.4)	155
10.7 Progressive tenses	156
10.8 Reflexive verbs	157

10.9	Verbal prefixes	157
10.9.1	Verbs with separable prefixes (separable verbs)	157
10.9.2	Verbs with inseparable prefixes (inseparable verbs)	159
10.9.3	Verbs with variable prefixes (separable or inseparable verbs)	160
10.10	Verbs followed by prepositional objects	161
10.10.1	Use of prepositional adverbs before subordinate clauses	169
10.11	Transitive and intransitive verbs	170
10.11.1	Use of <b>sein</b> and <b>lassen</b> with intransitive verbs	171
10.11.2	Intransitive verbs and the passive	172
10.12	List of irregular verbs	172
10.12.1	Alphabetical list of irregular verbs	178

## **Chapter 11 Conjunctions 183**

11.1	Coordinating conjunctions	184
11.2	Subordinating conjunctions	185
11.3	Conjunctions introducing infinitive clauses	192
11.4	Correlative conjunctions	193

## **Chapter 12 Prepositions 195**

12.1	Prepositions that take the accusative case	196
12.2	Prepositions that take the dative case	199
12.3	Prepositions that take both the accusative and the dative case	207
12.4	Prepositions that take the genitive case	210
12.5	Contraction of prepositions with the definite article	213
12.6	How to translate 'to' into German	214

## **Chapter 13 Numerals 217**

13.1	Cardinal numerals	217
13.2	Ordinal numerals	219
13.3	Fractions	221
13.4	Arithmetic/calculation	222
13.5	Age	222
13.6	Money	223
13.7	Telling the time	223
13.8	Dates	225
13.9	Weights	226

13.10 Measurement	227
13.11 School marks/grades	228
<b>Chapter 14 Negation</b>	<b>230</b>
14.1 Position of <b>nicht</b> (not) and <b>nie(mals)</b> (never)	230
14.2 Notes on negatives	232
<b>Chapter 15 Common German abbreviations</b>	<b>237</b>

## Chapter 4

# Case

German is a so-called inflectional language. Inflections are grammatical endings. The plural endings of nouns (books, children, oxen) and the endings of the various persons of the verb (I go, he goes) are examples of inflectional endings that both English and German share. Case is another form of inflection. At its simplest level case is the distinction between the subject (the nominative case), the direct object (the accusative case) and the indirect object (the dative case, i.e. 'to') in a sentence, e.g.

### **Der Vater hat seiner Tochter eine Email geschickt.**

The father (nom.) sent an email (acc.) to his daughter (dat.).

This sentence shows case being applied to nouns, **der**, **seiner** and **eine** being the indicators not only of the gender of their respective nouns, but also of their case, something which English can only indicate with word order. But look at this variant:

### **Seiner Tochter hat der Vater eine Email geschickt.**

This sentence means the same as the former although the connotation is different, i.e. it was his daughter he sent an email to and not anyone else. The forms **seiner** and **der** clearly indicate who is doing the sending (the subject or nominative) and who the email is being sent to (the indirect object or dative). One advantage of case, as this simple example illustrates, is that it can give the speaker a greater choice of word order.

English has only preserved separate case forms in its pronouns, i.e. 'I/me', 'he/him', 'she/her', 'we/us', 'they/them'; only in the second person, i.e. 'you/you', is no distinction made any more, although previously it was 'thou/thee' and 'ye/you'. English uses 'me', 'him', 'her' etc. in both the accusative and the dative, e.g.



**Ich habe ihn zu Hause besucht und ihm einen Scheck für €55 gegeben.**

I visited him (acc.) at home and gave him (dat.) a cheque (acc.) for 55 euros.

The difference between ‘who’ and ‘whom’, which is now waning in English, is also an example of case, i.e. nominative versus accusative/dative, e.g.

Who lives here?

**Wer wohnt hier?**

Who(m) did you visit in Berlin?

**Wen hast du in Berlin besucht?**

Who did you give the cheque to?/To whom did you give the cheque?

**Wem hast du den Scheck gegeben?**

The fact that ‘whom’ is fast dying out in English provides a living (just) example of the fate of case distinctions in English. But the point is that these distinctions are still very much alive and kicking in German and contribute to what English speakers find difficult about learning German. But once you have got your mind around the concept of case, it is extremely logical and getting it right is one of the great satisfactions of learning German.

In German, case endings don’t just apply in the above instances. Adjectives take case endings, and verbs and prepositions can require that the pronouns and nouns that follow them take either the accusative, dative or genitive case, e.g.

**Unser alter (nom. m.) Nachbar hat einen sehr netten (acc. m.) Sohn.**

Our elderly neighbour has a very nice son.

**Er hat mir geholfen.** (The verb **helfen** takes a dative object.)

He helped me.

**Meine Frau ist böse auf mich.** (**böse auf** + acc. = angry with)

My wife is angry with me.

**4.1 Case endings on nouns**

In a few specific cases the nouns themselves take case endings, not just the determiners (i.e. indefinite and definite articles, possessives etc.) standing in front of them as illustrated above. These few cases need to be noted.

All masculine and neuter nouns take an **-(e)s** ending in the genitive case in the singular; monosyllabic nouns may take **-es** rather than simply **-s** in more formal sounding language, but you will never be wrong if you simply add **-s**, except if the noun itself ends in **s, ß** or **z**, when **-es** must be used, e.g.

**der Name seines Sohn(e)s**

his son's name

**der Anfang des Gebets**

the beginning of the prayer

**die Größe des Kreuzes**

the size of the cross

In very formal written style and in older texts monosyllabic masculine and neuter nouns in the dative singular optionally take an **-e** ending, e.g.

**hinter dem Baume**

behind the tree

**auf dem Meeresgrunde**

at the bottom of the sea

**Dem Deutschen Volke**

To the German people (written on the façade of the Reichstag)

Generally speaking, these days this ending is limited to standard expressions, e.g.

**zu Hause**

at home

**im Grunde genommen**

basically

**im Laufe der Zeit**

in the course of time

Nouns of all three genders must add an **n** in the dative plural if the plural form does not already end in **-n**, e.g.

**in den Zimmern** (< pl. **Zimmer**)

in the rooms

**unter den Bäumen** (< pl. **Bäume**)

under the trees

**von den Mädchen** (< pl. **Mädchen**, i.e. plural already ends in **n**)

from the girls

## 4.2 Other uses of the nominative case

A noun used in isolation (i.e. not as part of a sentence) is assumed to be in the nominative case, e.g.

**Ein toller Film, nicht?**

A great film, don't you think?

If an isolated noun is in fact the object of an otherwise unuttered sentence, as in abbreviated answers to questions, the accusative or dative may be required, e.g.

**A: Was liest du? B: Einen Roman.**

A: What are you reading. B: A novel.

**A: Wem hast du das Geld gegeben? B: Dem Sohn.**

A: Who did you give the money to? B: The son.

People are addressed in the nominative case, e.g.

**Was ist passiert, mein lieber Freund?**

What (has) happened, my dear friend?

Complements of the following so-called copula verbs are in the nominative case; copula verbs take the nom. case both before and after them: **bleiben** (to remain, stay), **scheinen** (to seem, appear), **sein** (to be) and **werden** (to become), e.g.

**Er ist ein sehr guter Lehrer.**

He is a very good teacher.

**Er wird ein ausgezeichneter Athlet.**

He's becoming an excellent athlete.

**Er scheint ein ausgezeichneter Athlet zu sein.**

He seems to be an excellent athlete.

## 4.3 Other uses of the accusative case

Expressions such as **guten Morgen**, **guten Tag** and **gute Nacht** are in the accusative case as they are theoretical contractions of something like **Ich wünsche dir einen guten Morgen**. Similarly with **guten Appetit** (bon appétit), **herzlichen Glückwunsch** (congratulations) and **(recht) vielen Dank** (thanks very much).

The date at the top of a letter stands in the accusative case, although this is not always evident, depending on the format applied, e.g.

**den 8. (achten) September 2006 or 8. September 2006**  
8th September 2006

Many adverbial expressions denoting a particular point in time or a period of time take the acc. case (see 4.4 and 9.4 for expressions of time in the gen. case), e.g.

**Sie kommt erst nächsten Montag zurück.**  
She won't be back till next Monday.

**Ich habe den ganzen Tag auf dich gewartet.**  
I waited all day for you.

For prepositions that take the acc. case see 12.1 and 12.3.

#### 4.4 The genitive case

The genitive case usually indicates possession and very often equates to the use of 's and s' in English or to 'of', e.g.

**die Kinder meines Lehrers**  
my teacher's children

**die Spitze dieses Berges**  
the top of this mountain ('this mountain's top' sounds strange as it is inanimate)

The ending -s occurs in German too as a sign of possession but it is limited to personal names and no apostrophe is used with it, e.g.

**Ottos Schwester/Marias neue Küche/Thomas Manns Romane**  
Otto's sister/Maria's new kitchen/Thomas Mann's novels

Forms like **Frau Emsbergers Hund** (Mrs Emsberger's dog) and **Herrn Müllers Büro** (Mr Müller's office) are also possible.

An expression such as 'my aunt's dog' cannot be expressed in this way in German but must be rephrased as 'the dog of my aunt' where 'of my aunt' is in the genitive case, i.e. **der Hund meiner Tante**.

In more formal sounding German the -s ending is applied to the names of towns and countries but in everyday German is replaced by **von**, e.g.

**die Hauptstadt Deutschlands/Deutschlands Hauptstadt/die Hauptstadt von Deutschland**

Germany's capital city/the capital city of Germany

**in der Nähe Berlins/in der Nähe von Berlin**

near (lit. in the vicinity of) Berlin

The adverbial expression **eines Tages** (one day) takes the gen. case (see 4.3 and 9.4 for expressions of time in the acc. case). The adverbial expressions **morgens/vormittags** (in the morning), **nachmittags** (in the afternoon), **abends** (in the evening), **nachts** (during the night), as well as **tagsüber** (during the day), have all been derived from genitive forms but are no longer seen as such; compare 'of a morning/evening' etc. in English.

For prepositions that take the gen. case see 12.4.

The genitive of the interrogative pronoun 'who' is 'whose' or **wessen** in German (see 7.5) and the genitive of 'whose' as a relative pronoun is **dessen** or **deren** (see 7.6).

#### 4.5 Other uses of the dative case

Envelopes addressed to men, where the title used is **Herr**, require the dative of **Herr** to be used because what is implied is 'To Mr. X', e.g. **Herrn Joachim Polenz** (see n-nouns 6.1.1.h).

A considerable number of commonly used verbs take an indirect object, i.e. dative object, where in English the same verbs take a direct object (see 10.4.4 for use of these verbs in the passive), e.g.

**danken** (to thank s.o.)

**Ich danke dir/Ihnen.**

Thank you. (a stylistic variant of **danke schön**)

**helfen** (to help s.o.)

**Die Krankenschwester hat dem Patienten nicht geholfen.**

The nurse did not help the patient.

Other common verbs that take a dative object are:

**antworten** (to answer s.o.)

**begegnen** (to bump into s.o.)

**beiwohnen** (to be present at)

**danken** (to thank)

**dienen** (to serve s.o.)  
**folgen** (to follow)  
**gehören** (to obey)  
**gehören** (to belong to)  
**glauben** (to believe s.o.)  
**gleichen** (to resemble)  
**gratulieren** (to congratulate)  
**helfen** (to help)  
**imponieren** (to impress)  
**kündigen** (to fire, sack)  
**nachlaufen** (to run after)  
**nützen** (to be of use to s.o.)  
**passen** (to suit)  
**schaden** (to be harmful to, to damage)  
**schmeicheln** (to flatter)  
**trauen** (to trust)  
**vertrauen** (to have trust in)  
**wehtun** (to hurt)  
**widersprechen** (to contradict)  
**zustimmen** (to agree with s.t.)

For prepositions that take the dat. case see 12.2 and 12.3.

#### 4.6 Nouns in apposition

Look at the following sentence:

**Ludwig Schmollgruber, früherer Direktor dieser Schule, ist heute in einem Autounfall umgekommen.**

Ludwig Schmollgruber, this school's former headmaster, died today in a car accident.

The expression *früherer Direktor dieser Schule* is said to stand in apposition to *Ludwig Schmollgruber*; it offers, between commas, additional information about the noun that precedes it. This is significant in German as a noun standing in apposition to another must be in the same case as the noun to which it refers, e.g.

**Ich habe Ludwig Schmollgruber, den früheren Direktor dieser Schule, gekannt.**

I knew Ludwig Schmollgruber, this school's former headmaster.

**Ich hatte es Herrn Schmollgruber, dem früheren Direktor dieser Schule, schon zimal gesagt.**

I had told Mr Schmollgruber, this school's former headmaster, umpteen times.

#### 4.7 Order of cases in paradigms

So many aspects of German grammar are presented in the form of paradigms, as for example the following paradigm for the definite article:

	<i>M</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>Pl</i>
<i>N</i>	<b>der</b>	<b>die</b>	<b>das</b>	<b>die</b>
<i>A</i>	<b>den</b>	<b>die</b>	<b>das</b>	<b>die</b>
<i>G</i>	<b>des</b>	<b>der</b>	<b>des</b>	<b>der</b>
<i>D</i>	<b>dem</b>	<b>der</b>	<b>dem</b>	<b>den</b>

Not all books use this order of the cases when setting out such paradigms. NAGD is the traditional order in the Anglo-Saxon world and the one adhered to here. In Germany, where there is a long tradition of learning Latin and Greek at school, the order NGDA is traditionally used, as this is the order most usual in the learning of classical languages. This order is also the explanation for the cases commonly being called in German **der erste, zweite, dritte** and **vierte Fall** respectively, e.g. **Direktor steht im dritten Fall** – **Direktor** is in the dative case (in the last example in 4.6). Some textbooks for beginners adopt the order NADG, which is the order in which you normally learn the cases, as the genitive is usually regarded as the most difficult case to learn as well as being the least common.

Some textbooks also apply the order MNF to genders instead of the usual MFN when setting out paradigms like the above. This can be very confusing so be on the lookout for variation in this respect from book to book.

# Articles and other determiners

Articles is the collective name for the definite and the indefinite article. The definite article in English is ‘the’ and the indefinite article is ‘a/an’; compare ‘the man’, a particular or definite man, and ‘a man’, meaning any man, not a particular one. These articles vary in German according to gender, number and case, as illustrated in 5.1.

Not only articles but other words too can stand in front of nouns and these also vary according to gender, number and case, e.g. **dieser** (this/these), **jeder** (each/every), **jener** (that/those), **mancher** (many a), **solcher** (such), **welcher** (which), as well as all the possessive pronouns (e.g. **mein**, **dein**, **sein**, **ihr**, **unser**, **euer**, **Ihr/ihr**). All these words, together with the articles, are referred to collectively as determiners. Depending on the determiner before the noun, any adjective that follows it will also be subject to a variety of endings (see 8.1.1 to 8.1.3), the variation in ending of the determiner and a following adjective being perhaps the most difficult aspect of German to master. Tricky and all as this might be to learn and apply, there is an underlying logic and system to it all. You need to persevere until the penny drops.

## 5.1 The definite article

	<i>M</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>Pl</i>
<i>N</i>	<b>der</b>	<b>die</b>	<b>das</b>	<b>die</b>
<i>A</i>	<b>den</b>	<b>die</b>	<b>das</b>	<b>die</b>
<i>G</i>	<b>des</b>	<b>der</b>	<b>des</b>	<b>der</b>
<i>D</i>	<b>dem</b>	<b>der</b>	<b>dem</b>	<b>den</b>

The definite article in English, ‘the’, could not be simpler whereas the German equivalents are considerably more complicated. Whenever you utter the word ‘the’ in German you have to ask yourself firstly whether



the following noun is masculine, feminine, neuter or plural and secondly whether that noun is the subject (nom.), direct object (acc.) or indirect object (dat.) or shows possession (gen.); only then can you decide which of the sixteen words above is appropriate for the context. To say there are sixteen forms is of course a slight exaggeration, as several of the forms occur more than once; this is possible because context always makes it clear what is intended. Let's take **den**, for example:

**Die Frau hat den Mann in der Stadt getroffen.** (masculine acc.)

The woman met the man in the city.

**Der Schulleiter hat den Eltern einen Brief geschickt.** (plural dat.)

The headmaster sent the parents a letter.

As you should learn every new German noun together with its definite article, you will know from the outset that a noun is masculine, feminine or neuter, which is more or less a matter of rote learning, and thus all you have to think about is what case is required in a given context. If you understand the general make-up of a sentence, i.e. who is doing what to whom, deciding on the appropriate case is easy.

The **der/die/das** paradigm given here fulfils several functions in German, all of which are clear from the context, but the variety of meanings it can have can be confusing to the beginner. In addition to rendering the definite article, it can also translate 'that/those' (see 5.1.1), 'he/she/it' (see 7.1.5), as well as render the relative pronoun (see 7.6).

### 5.1.1 Use of the definite article

Although generally speaking the definite article is used in German as in English, there are a number of cases where it is required in German but not in English. Some cases are situations where its use can be defined, others are individual idioms.

a) It is always used before a large variety of abstract nouns:

<b>die Geschichte</b>	history
<b>der Himmel</b>	heaven
<b>die Hölle</b>	hell
<b>das Leben</b>	life

<b>die Liebe</b>	love
<b>der Mensch</b>	mankind
<b>die moderne Kunst</b>	modern art
<b>die Natur</b>	nature
<b>der Tod</b>	death

**Die Natur ist zu bewundern.**

Nature is to be admired.

**der längste Krieg in der Geschichte**

the longest war in history

**So ist das Leben.**

Such is life.

- b) It is always used before names of towns and countries when they are preceded by an adjective:

**das schöne Berlin**

beautiful Berlin

**im damaligen Deutschland**

in Germany at that time

- c) It is always used before seasons:

**Der Frühling ist die schönste Jahreszeit.**

Spring is the nicest season.

**Sie war im Winter in Australien.**

She was in Australia in winter.

- d) It is always used with meals after prepositions:

**nach/vor dem Abendessen**

after/before dinner

**beim/zum Frühstück**

at/for breakfast

- e) It is always used before the names of streets:

**Ich wohne in der Friedrichstraße.**

I live in Friedrich Street.

**Es ist im Langenkampsweg passiert.**

It happened in Langenkamp Road.

- f) The names of just a few countries require the definite article (compare 'the Ukraine', 'the Sudan'):

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>plural</i>
<b>der Irak</b>	<b>die Schweiz</b>	<b>die Niederlande</b>
<b>der Iran</b>	<b>die Slowakei</b>	<b>die Philippinen</b>
<b>der Libanon</b>	<b>die Türkei</b>	<b>die Vereinigten Staaten/die USA</b>
<b>der Sudan</b>	<b>die Ukraine</b>	

Use the appropriate case of the definite article where a preposition is involved, e.g.

**Er wohnt schon seit Jahren in der Türkei/im Irak.**

He has been living in Turkey/Iraq for years.

**Wir fliegen morgen in die Vereinigten Staaten.**

We are flying to the United States tomorrow.

The same applies to the name of a few regions:

**das Elsass** (Alsace)**der Kosovo****die Lombardei** (Lombardy)**die Normandie****die Toskana** (Tuscany)

- g) It is used in various idioms together with prepositions where the article is not required in English, e.g.

<b>in die Stadt/in der Stadt</b>	to town/in town
<b>in die Kirche/in der Kirche</b>	to church/in church
<b>in die Schule/in der Schule</b>	to school/at school
<b>Die Schule beginnt um...</b>	School begins at...
<b>im Gefängnis</b>	in jail
<b>an der Universität</b>	at university
<b>in der Praxis</b>	in practice
<b>über/unter dem Meeresspiegel</b>	above/below sea level

<b>aus dem Deutschen übersetzen</b>	to translate from German
<b>ins Deutsche übersetzen</b>	to translate into German
<b>im zweiten Gang</b>	in second gear
<b>mit dem Auto/Zug/Flugzeug etc.</b>	by car/train/plane etc.
<b>mit der Hand</b>	by hand
<b>das nächste Mal</b>	next time

## 5.2 Other determiners inflected like der/die/das

A context may require you to refer to ‘this man’, rather than ‘the man’, or alternatively ‘that man’ (*jener Mann*), ‘every man’ (*jeder Mann*) or ‘which man’ (*welcher Mann*). Each of these words is a determiner which takes the same endings as *der/die/das*. Here are the paradigms for *dieser* and *welcher*, for example:

	<i>M</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>Pl</i>
<i>N</i>	<b>dieser</b>	<b>diese</b>	<b>dieses</b>	<b>diese</b>
<i>A</i>	<b>diesen</b>	<b>diese</b>	<b>dieses</b>	<b>diese</b>
<i>G</i>	<b>dieses</b>	<b>dieser</b>	<b>dieses</b>	<b>dieser</b>
<i>D</i>	<b>diesem</b>	<b>dieser</b>	<b>diesem</b>	<b>diesen</b>

	<i>M</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>Pl</i>
<i>N</i>	<b>welcher</b>	<b>welche</b>	<b>welches</b>	<b>welche</b>
<i>A</i>	<b>welchen</b>	<b>welche</b>	<b>welches</b>	<b>welche</b>
<i>G</i>	<b>welches</b>	<b>welcher</b>	<b>welches</b>	<b>welcher</b>
<i>D</i>	<b>welchem</b>	<b>welcher</b>	<b>welchem</b>	<b>welchen</b>

Even in English ‘this’ changes to ‘these’ before a plural noun and ‘that’ to ‘those’, which gives you some taste for what German is doing here, e.g. *dieses Haus* (this house) > *diese Häuser* (these houses).

*Jener* (that/those) is a word seldom encountered in speech or even in natural writing. There are two more usual ways of expressing ‘that/those’ in German. The first way is by using *der/die/das* but with emphasis, e.g.

**Den Namen kenne ich nicht.** (commonly starting with the emphasized word)  
I don’t know that name.

**Wir wohnen in d e m Haus.** (spacing can indicate stress in written German)

We live in that house.

The second way of expressing ‘that/those’ is simply by using **dieser** and dispensing with the distinction we make in English between ‘this’ and ‘that’:

**Diesen Namen kenne ich nicht.**

**Wir wohnen in diesem Haus.**

There are two other determiners which take the endings of **der/die/das** but these are most frequently encountered in the plural, i.e. **mancher** (some, many a), **solcher** (such), e.g.

**Manche Leute mögen es so.**

Some people (= many a person) like it like that.

**Solche Leute kann ich nicht ausstehen.**

I can’t stand such people/people like that.

The most frequent way of expressing ‘such a’ is **solch ein**, where **solch** is invariable and **ein** is declined (see 5.3).

### 5.3 The indefinite article

	M	F	N
N	<b>ein</b>	<b>eine</b>	<b>ein</b>
A	<b>einen</b>	<b>eine</b>	<b>ein</b>
G	<b>eines</b>	<b>einer</b>	<b>eines</b>
D	<b>einem</b>	<b>einer</b>	<b>einem</b>

The indefinite article in English, ‘a’ or ‘an’, is very simple. The German equivalent, **ein**, not only means ‘a/an’ but also ‘one’. The numeral ‘one’, when counting, is **eins**, e.g. **eins, zwei, drei** (see 13.1), but when followed by a noun **ein** in both senses takes all the above endings, the distinction in meaning between ‘one’ and ‘a/an’ being made by stressing the former, and the ending being determined by the gender and case of the noun, e.g.

**Sie hat nur e i n e n Sohn.**

She has only one son.

**Sie hat einen Sohn.**

She has a son.

There is of course no fourth column with plural forms in the above paradigm, unlike for **der/die/das**, because by definition 'a/an' cannot be followed by a plural noun.

### **5.3.1 Omission of the indefinite article**

The indefinite article is sometimes omitted in German where it is used in English.

- a) It is usually omitted after the preposition **als**, e.g.

**Er hat seine Untertasse als Aschenbecher benutzt.**

He used his saucer as an ashtray.

- b) It is commonly omitted after the preposition **ohne** (see 12.1), e.g.

**Er ist ohne Hut in dieser Hitze spazieren gegangen.**

He has gone for a stroll in this heat without a hat.

- c) It is omitted before professions after copula verbs (see 4.2) but is always inserted when the profession is preceded by an adjective:

**Er ist Lehrer.**

He is a teacher.

**Er ist ein sehr guter Lehrer.**

He is a very good teacher.

**Er ist Vater geworden.**

He has become a father.

- d) It is omitted before nationalities after copula verbs (see 4.2) but is always inserted when the nationality is preceded by an adjective:

**Er ist Deutscher/Berliner.**

He is a German/Berliner.

**Er ist ein waschechter Deutscher/Berliner.**

He is a genuine German/Berliner.

e) It is omitted in various standard expressions:

<b>Das ist schade.</b>	That's a pity.
<b>Kopfschmerzen haben</b>	to have a headache
<b>Auge um Auge</b>	an eye for an eye
<b>Es ist Viertel vor/nach zwei.</b>	It is a quarter to/past two.

#### 5.4 Other determiners inflected like ein

There are a number of determiners that take the same endings as **ein**, namely **kein** (no, not a/any) and the possessive adjectives **mein**, **dein**, **sein**, **ihr**, **unser**, **euer** and **ihr**, several of which sound like **ein**, as you can see, e.g.

	<i>M</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>Pl</i>
<i>N</i>	<b>mein</b>	<b>meine</b>	<b>mein</b>	<b>meine</b>
<i>A</i>	<b>meinen</b>	<b>meine</b>	<b>mein</b>	<b>meine</b>
<i>G</i>	<b>meines</b>	<b>meiner</b>	<b>meines</b>	<b>meiner</b>
<i>D</i>	<b>meinem</b>	<b>meiner</b>	<b>meinem</b>	<b>meinen</b>

The paradigm for these determiners has a fourth, plural column which is not present in the **ein** paradigm (see 5.3).

#### 5.5 Indefinite pronouns used as determiners (see 7.7.1 and 8.1.4)

When followed by a plural noun the pronouns **alle** (all), **andere** (other), **einige** (some), **mehrere** (several), **viele** (many), **verschiedene** (various/different) and **wenige** (few) are used as determiners which are inflected for case, e.g.

<i>N</i>	<b>alle/viele Städte</b>	all/many cities
<i>A</i>	<b>alle/viele Städte</b>	
<i>G</i>	<b>aller/vieler Städte</b>	
<i>D</i>	<b>allen/vielen Städten</b>	

## Chapter 6

# Nouns

### 6.1 Gender of nouns

All German nouns belong to one of three genders: masculine, feminine or neuter. It is imperative you learn nouns together with the appropriate definite article (i.e. *der*, *die* or *das*, see 5.1), as the ramifications of belonging to one of these three genders pervade German. Without knowing the gender of a noun you will not, for example, be able to correctly say ‘the table/door/house’, ‘a table/door/house’, ‘a big table/door/house’, ‘this table/door/house’, ‘which table/door/house’, or ‘his table/door/house’ as ‘the’, ‘a’, ‘big’, ‘that’, ‘this’, ‘which’ and ‘his’ will most likely vary as ‘table’ is masculine, ‘door’ is feminine and ‘house’ is neuter, e.g.

**der Tisch/die Tür/das Haus**

**ein Tisch/eine Tür/ein Haus**

**ein großer Tisch/eine große Tür/ein großes Haus**

**dieser Tisch/diese Tür/dieses Haus**

**welcher Tisch/welche Tür/welches Haus**

**sein Tisch/seine Tür/sein Haus**

You will even be faced by nouns not preceded by a determiner like *der/die/das*, which indicate the gender of the noun, but where you simply need to know intuitively what gender the noun is, e.g. *frische Milch* (fresh milk) and *kaltes Bier* (cold beer), where the knowledge that *Milch* is feminine and *Bier* is neuter determines the ending on the preceding adjective.

Learning the gender of each noun is one of the most difficult aspects of learning German but one you will have to master. There are a few rules that will give you some assistance in learning the gender of a noun but they only cover a minority of nouns.



A small minority of German nouns are neuter, possibly no more than 10 per cent, so if you have no idea of the gender of a noun and are forced to guess, it would not be wise to opt for neuter. Feminine nouns, as the rules given below will indicate, are often recognizable as feminine due to their ending. Nouns that end in *-e* are overwhelmingly feminine. So few neuter nouns end in *-e* that they can be rote learnt, e.g. **das Auge** (eye), **das Ende** (end), **das Interesse** (interest). Masculine nouns that end in *-e* are weak nouns (also called *n-nouns*, see 6.1.1.h) and nearly all of them refer to masculine beings and thus their masculine gender is obvious, e.g. **der Russe** (Russian). Otherwise you can assume that any noun ending in *-e* is feminine, e.g. **die Decke** (ceiling), **die Katze** (cat), **die Tapete** (wallpaper).

Sometimes the meaning of a noun serves as an aid to gender. The word for a ‘painter’, **der Maler**, must be masculine as it refers to a male being. The word for a ‘bear’, **der Bär**, is also masculine as it refers to a large, strong animal, whereas a ‘mouse’ is **die Maus**; but this does not help much as the word for a ‘horse’ is **das Pferd**. But there is a sub-rule here that can help: if there is a separate word for the male and female of a given animal, e.g. ‘stallion’ and ‘mare’, those words will be masculine and feminine respectively but the generic word, ‘horse’, will often be neuter, e.g. **das Huhn/der Hahn/die Henne** (chicken/rooster/hen), **das Schwein/der Eber/die Sau** (pig/boar/sow). But this rule has its limits too as a ‘duck’ is **die Ente** and a ‘goose’ is **die Gans**, but that is because, as in English, the name of the female of the species is the generic term for the species.

Sometimes gender is determined by the form of the word; certain endings will always be masculine, feminine or neuter, e.g. **die Gelegenheit** (opportunity) and **die Geschwindigkeit** (speed) because all nouns that end in *-heit* or *-keit* are feminine (see below).

The rules for gender that follow are far from ideal but they are as good as it gets.

When nouns are joined together to form a compound noun (see 2.4 and 6.8) the gender of the new word is the same as that of the last element in the compound, e.g. **die Zeit** + **der Plan** > **der Zeitplan** (schedule), **das Haus** + **die Tür** > **die Haustür** (front door).

### 6.1.1 Rules for masculine gender

Nouns in the following categories are masculine:

- a) All professions and nationalities that refer to male beings, e.g. **der Bäcker** (baker), **der Lehrer** (teacher), **der Philosoph** (philosopher), **der Amerikaner** (American), **der Deutsche** (German).
- b) The names of large wild animals, e.g. **der Elefant** (elephant), **der Löwe** (lion), **der Tiger** (tiger). Large domestic animals are often neuter but the male of the species, where a separate word exists, is masculine, e.g. **der Entenich** (drake), **der Hengst** (stallion), **der Stier** (bull).
- c) The four seasons, e.g. **der Frühling**, **der Sommer**, **der Herbst**, **der Winter**.
- d) The days of the week, e.g. **der Sonnabend**, **der Sonntag**, **der Montag** etc.
- e) The months of the year, e.g. **der Januar**, **der Februar**, **der März** etc.
- f) All nouns derived from verbs beginning with an inseparable prefix where the **-en** of the infinitive has been dropped, e.g. **der Besuch** (visit, <besuchen 'to visit'), **der Versuch** (attempt, <versuchen 'to try').
- g) The names of many rivers (those that aren't masculine are feminine, never neuter), e.g. **der Inn**, **der Lech**, **der Main**, **der Rhein** (Rhine); **der Amazonas** (Amazon), **der Ganges**, **der Nil** (Nile).
- h) **Weak masculine nouns or n-nouns**

Nearly all the following nouns denote masculine beings but don't end in **-e**, but, like those that do end in **-e**, all are weak masculine nouns and also take **-en** in the singular in all cases but the nominative. All nouns ending in **-arch**, **-ant**, **-anz**, **-ent**, **-enz**, **-ist**, **-it**, **-krat**, **-nom**, **-ot** and **-soph** belong here.

<b>der Agent</b>	<b>der Despot</b>	<b>der Idiot</b>	<b>der Mensch</b>
<b>der Akrobat</b>	<b>der Diplomat</b>	<b>der Journalist</b>	<b>der Monarch</b>
<b>der Analphabet</b>	<b>der Dozent</b>	<b>der Kaffer*</b>	<b>der Musikant</b>
<b>der Architekt</b>	<b>der Elefant</b>	<b>der Kakerlak</b>	<b>der Nachbar*</b>
<b>der Asiat</b>	<b>der Favorit</b>	<b>der Kamerad</b>	<b>der Nachfahr</b>
<b>der Astronom</b>	<b>der Fink</b>	<b>der Kandidat</b>	<b>der Narr</b>
<b>der Bandit</b>	<b>der Fotograf</b>	<b>der Katholik</b>	<b>der Obelisk</b>
<b>der Bär</b>	<b>der Fürst</b>	<b>der Klient</b>	<b>der Päderast</b>
<b>der Bauer*</b>	<b>der Geck</b>	<b>der Kommandant</b>	<b>der Patriarch</b>
<b>der Bayer*</b>	<b>der Graf</b>	<b>der Konsonant</b>	<b>der Patriot</b>
<b>der Bürokrat</b>	<b>der Gymnasiast</b>	<b>der Kosak</b>	<b>der Philosoph</b>
<b>der Chaot</b>	<b>der Held</b>	<b>der Kosmonaut</b>	<b>der Pilot</b>
<b>der Christ</b>	<b>der Herr*</b>	<b>der Leopard</b>	<b>der Pirat</b>
<b>der Demokrat</b>	<b>der Hirt</b>	<b>der Mandant</b>	<b>der Polizist</b>

<b>der Präfekt</b>	<b>der Regent</b>	<b>der Student</b>	<b>der Urahn</b>
<b>der Präsident</b>	<b>der Rekrut</b>	<b>der Tor</b>	<b>der Veteran</b>
<b>der Prinz</b>	<b>der Soldat</b>	<b>der Transvestit</b>	<b>der Vorfahr</b>
<b>der Prophet</b>	<b>der Spatz</b>	<b>der Tyrann</b>	<b>der Zar</b>
<b>der Rebell</b>	<b>der Steinmetz</b>	<b>der Ungar*</b>	<b>der Zypriot</b>

\* Herr takes -n in the singular but -en in the plural, whereas Bauer, Bayer, Kaffer, Nachbar and Ungar take -n in both the singular and the plural.

There are a few weak masculine nouns, all loanwords with a stressed ending, that don't designate living beings:

**der Automat, Diamant, Paragraph, Planet, Quotient, Satellit**

The following masculine nouns in -e take -ens in the genitive but otherwise behave like other weak masculine nouns, taking -en in all cases except the nom. in the singular, as well as the plural. These are the only weak nouns ending in -e that do not refer to masculine beings:

<b>der Buchstabe</b>	<b>der Funke</b>	<b>der Glaube</b>	<b>der Wille</b>
<b>der Drache</b>	<b>der Gedanke</b>	<b>der Name</b>	

**6.1.2 Rules for feminine gender**

Nouns in the following categories are feminine:

- a) All nouns ending in **-in**, which is added to the masculine form of professions and nationalities to render the female of the species, e.g. **die Lehrerin, die Philosophin, die Amerikanerin**.
- b) All nouns ending in **-heit** and **-keit**, all of which express abstract concepts, e.g. **die Gelegenheit** (opportunity), **die Gemütlichkeit** (cosiness).
- c) All nouns ending in **-ung**, e.g. **die Übung** (exercise), **die Zeitung** (newspaper).
- d) All nouns of French origin ending in **-ie, -ik, -ion**, e.g. **die Biologie, die Musik, die Station**.
- e) Those rivers that are not masculine (see 6.1.1.g) are feminine, never neuter, e.g. **die Donau** (Danube), **die Elbe, die Isar, die Oder, die Weser; die Seine, die Themse** (Thames).

### 6.1.3 Rules for neuter gender

Nouns in the following categories are neuter:

- All diminutives ending in **-chen** and **-lein** regardless of the gender of the original noun, e.g. **das Hündchen** (< **der Hund** ‘puppy’), **das Püppchen** (< **die Puppe** ‘little doll’).
- All nouns derived from infinitives, e.g. **das Essen** (eating/food), **das Kochen** (cooking), **das Lesen** (reading).
- The names of all cities and countries (except the very few notable masculine and feminine ones, see 5.1.1.f) are neuter. You are not normally aware of this, e.g.

#### **Er wohnt in Warschau/Polen.**

He lives in Warsaw/Poland.

But if the name of a town or country is qualified in some way, usually by an adjective, the definite article must be used and that must be neuter, e.g.

#### **das wunderschöne Venedig**

wonderful Venice

#### **im damaligen Deutschland**

in Germany at that time

#### **das Rom von heute/von Cäsar**

the Rome of today/of Caesar

## 6.2 Pluralization of nouns

Deciding on how to pluralize a German noun is a bothersome aspect of the language, as plurals can be formed in any one of nine ways, i.e. by adding **ë**, **-e**, **ëe**, **-er**, **ëer**, **-n**, **-en**, **-s** or by simply doing nothing to the noun. There is a direct connection between the gender of a noun and the way it forms its plural – only certain endings apply to certain genders. Some generalizations apply, even if there are many exceptions to these rules, e.g.

- A monosyllabic masculine noun forms its plural by adding **ëe** (**Baum** > **Bäume**), although some add just **-e** (**Schuh** > **Schuhe**).
- A feminine noun takes **-en** (**Tür** > **Türen**), but some take **ëe** (**Stadt** > **Städte**).

- c) A monosyllabic neuter noun takes *er* (**Haus** > **Häuser**), but some take *-e* (**Jahr** > **Jahre**).

Nearly all German nouns belong to one of the following five groups. Learn the following by heart and you will seldom have to deal with exceptions to these rules. The system applied below is as follows. Each group starts with the rule, e.g. **do not change in the plural**. Then follow the definitions of the nouns that belong in that group and then the common exceptions to the rule are listed. The lists of exceptions are not complete, but they do contain by far the most common nouns you are likely to encounter. In some instances the lists contain not the exceptions to the rule, but the nouns to which the rule in question applies, as the number of nouns concerned is finite. A little time spent now getting this under your belt will save you a great deal of floundering later.

**6.2.1 GROUP 1: do not change in the plural**

- 1 Masculine and neuter nouns ending in *-el*, *-en* and *-er*, e.g. **der Beutel**, **der Balken**, **das Fenster**
- 2 Diminutives in *-chen* and *-lein*, e.g. **das Männchen**, **das Büchlein**
- 3 Neuter nouns beginning with *Ge-* and ending in *-e*, e.g. **Gebäude**
- 4 Two feminine nouns, **die Mutter** and **die Tochter**, which become **Mütter** and **Töchter**

These masculine nouns do not take an ending but do take an Umlaut in the plural:

<b>der Acker</b>	<b>der Faden</b>	<b>der Laden</b>	<b>der Schaden</b>
<b>der Apfel</b>	<b>der Garten</b>	<b>der Mangel</b>	<b>der Schnabel</b>
<b>der Boden</b>	<b>der Graben</b>	<b>der Mantel</b>	<b>der Vater</b>
<b>der Bogen</b>	<b>der Hammer</b>	<b>der Nagel</b>	<b>der Vogel</b>
<b>der Bruder</b>	<b>der Kasten</b>	<b>der Ofen</b>	Also: <b>das Kloster</b>

**6.2.2 GROUP 2: add *er* or *-e* (if the vowel is not umlautable)**

- 1 Masculine nouns of one syllable (as well as a few bisyllabic nouns), e.g. **Baum**, **Stuhl**
- 2 Some neuter nouns of one syllable (listed here); none take an Umlaut except **das Floß**
- 3 Some feminine nouns of one syllable (listed here)
- 4 Masculine and neuter nouns ending in *-ich*, *-ig*, *-ing*, *-nis*, *-sal*, e.g. **der König**, **der Jüngling**, **das Gefängnis** (NB: Those ending in *-nis* go *-nisse* in the plural)

- 5 Masculine and neuter nouns beginning with **Ge-** and ending in a stressed syllable, e.g. **das Gebet** (see Group 3 for some neuter exceptions)

These masculine nouns do not take an Umlaut in the plural:

**der Arm      der Flur      der Mond      der Ruf      der Tag**  
**der Besuch    der Hund      der Ort      der Schuh**  
**der Dom      der Monat      der Punkt    der Stoff**

These neuter nouns do not take an Umlaut (no neuter nouns in Group 2 do except **das Floß**):

**das Bein    das Haar    das Pult    das Schwein    das Tier    das Wort\***  
**das Boot    das Jahr    das Schaf    das Spiel      das Tor**  
**das Ding    das Pferd    das Schiff    das Stück      das Werk**

\*Also found in Group 3 but with a different meaning, i.e. **Worte** is a collective referring to what someone said, e.g. **Gottes Worte** (the words of God).

These are the most common feminine nouns in this group but there are more:

**die Angst    die Gans    die Luft      die Nuss      die Wurst**  
**die Axt      die Hand    die Lust      die Schnur**  
**die Bank      die Haut    die Macht    die Stadt**  
**die Braut    die Kraft    die Maus      die Sucht**  
**die Faust    die Kuh      die Nacht    die Wand**  
**die Frucht    die Kunst    die Not      die Werkstatt**

### 6.2.3 GROUP 3: add **er** or **-er** (if the vowel is not umlautable)

- 1 A few masculine nouns (listed here)
- 2 Some neuter nouns (listed here)
- 3 Masculine and neuter nouns ending in **-tum**, e.g. **der Reichtum**, **das Altertum**

These are the masculine nouns that don't end in **-tum**:

**der Geist      der Mann      der Strauch**  
**der Gott      der Mund      der Wald**  
**der Leib      der Rand      der Wurm**

This is a sample of the neuter nouns but there are more:

<b>das Amt</b>	<b>das Feld</b>	<b>das Haus</b>	<b>das Loch</b>
<b>das Bad</b>	<b>das Gehalt</b>	<b>das Huhn</b>	<b>das Maul</b>
<b>das Band</b>	<b>das Geld</b>	<b>das Kalb</b>	<b>das Nest</b>
<b>das Bild</b>	<b>das Gesicht</b>	<b>das Kind</b>	<b>das Rad</b>
<b>das Buch</b>	<b>das Gespenst</b>	<b>das Lamm</b>	<b>das Schloss</b>
<b>das Dach</b>	<b>das Glas</b>	<b>das Land</b>	<b>das Tal</b>
<b>das Dorf</b>	<b>das Glied</b>	<b>das Licht</b>	<b>das Volk</b>
<b>das Ei</b>	<b>das Grab</b>	<b>das Lied</b>	<b>das Wort*</b>

\* Also found in Group 2 but with a different meaning, i.e. *Wörter* refers to individual words, not words as a collective, e.g. *das Wörterbuch* (dictionary).

#### 6.2.4 GROUP 4: add -n or -en

- 1 Most feminine nouns (i.e. all those not listed in Group 2)
- 2 Weak masculine nouns, also called n-nouns (i.e. all those ending in -e plus those listed here, see 6.1.1.h)
- 3 A few neuter nouns (listed here)

These masculine nouns are weak although they do not end in -e:

<b>der Bär</b>	<b>der Graf</b>	<b>der Präsident</b>
<b>der Bauer</b>	<b>der Held</b>	<b>der Prinz</b>
<b>der Dozent</b>	<b>der Herr</b>	<b>der Soldat</b>
<b>der Elefant</b>	<b>der Kamerad</b>	<b>der Spatz</b>
<b>der Fink</b>	<b>der Mensch</b>	<b>der Student</b>
<b>der Fürst</b>	<b>der Nachbar</b>	<b>der Vorfahr</b>

These are the few neuter nouns in this group:

<b>das Auge</b>	<b>das Hemd</b>	<b>das Interesse</b>
<b>das Bett</b>	<b>das Herz</b>	<b>das Ohr</b>
<b>das Ende</b>	<b>das Insekt</b>	

#### 6.2.5 GROUP 5: add -s

- 1 Foreign words ending in -a, -i, -o and -u, e.g. *das Sofa*, *das Taxi*, *das Auto*, *das Känguru*
- 2 English loanwords ending in -y, e.g. *das Baby*, *das Hobby*, *das Handy*
- 3 Several English and French loanwords: *der Park*, *der Scheck*, *die Bar*, *die Band*, *das Hotel*, *das Modem*, *das Restaurant*

### 6.3 Diminutization of nouns

There are two ways of forming the diminutive in German, by adding either **-chen** or **-lein** to a noun while umlauting the vowel in the root syllable if it can take an Umlaut, e.g. **das Haus** > **das Häuschen**, **der Tisch** > **das Tischlein**. These days **-lein** tends to sound a little poetic or archaic. In practice **-chen** is much more commonly used than **-lein**, so stick to **-chen** yourself. All diminutized nouns, whatever their original gender, become neuter once they take either of these endings.

Although in theory any (usually only) monosyllabic noun can be diminutized in either of these ways, it is best not to use diminutives you have not seen or heard before; they are seldom necessary. If you want to say ‘a small card’, for example, that can be just as well expressed by **eine kleine Karte** as by **ein (kleines) Kärtchen**.

Although the diminutized form generally expresses a smaller example of whatever the noun is, there are numerous recognized diminutive forms that render a new item of vocabulary, e.g. a **Fräulein** is not a small **Frau** but an unmarried woman, **Mädchen** (diminutive of archaic **die Maid** ‘maiden’) is the usual word for girl, and a **Brötchen** is a breadroll, not a small loaf of bread. ‘Male’ and ‘female’ of animals are rendered by the words **Männchen** and **Weibchen**, which theoretically can also mean ‘little man’ and ‘little woman’, but the latter is a good example of the added semantic connotations that can occur when a noun is diminutized and why you should be careful with diminutives because **Weibchen** can also mean ‘the little woman’ (i.e. the wife) or a ‘dumb broad’. The young of animals are often diminutive forms, e.g. **Kätzchen** (kitten), **Wölfchen** (wolf cub).

In southern German the endings **-l**, **-el**, **-erl** and **-ele** are commonly heard and occasionally written, e.g. **das Mäde(r)l**, **das Backhendl** (= **Backhähnchen** ‘roast chicken’), **das Dirndl(kleid)** (traditional female costume in the south). In Switzerland the ending **-li** is used in spoken German, e.g. **das Müesli** (muesli), **das Maidli** (girl), **das Tischli** (table).

Using a diminutive ending does not prevent you from also using an adjective like **klein** (small) or **winzig** (tiny) with the noun in question if you want to impart how minute something is, e.g.

**Meine Tante hat ein kleines Ferienhäuschen auf Helgoland.**

My aunt has a really small holiday house on Helgoland.

Diminutives are particularly common in fairytales, whose titles frequently contain a diminutive too, e.g. **Aschenbrödel/Aschenputtel** (Cinderella),



Dornröschen (Sleeping Beauty), **Hänsel und Gretel** (Hansel and Gretel), Rotkäppchen (Little Red Riding Hood), **Rumpelstilzchen** (Rumpelstiltskin).

## 6.4 Names of towns

### 6.4.1 Names of German towns

The names of a few well-known German-speaking towns differ in German from English. Where the stress differs from English below, ' precedes the stressed syllable:

<b>Basel</b>	Bâle
<b>Hameln</b>	Hamlin
<b>Han'nover</b>	Hanover
<b>'Koblenz</b>	Coblence
<b>Köln</b>	Cologne
<b>München</b>	Munich
<b>Nürnberg</b>	Nuremberg
<b>Wien</b>	Vienna
<b>Zürich</b>	Zurich

### 6.4.2 Names of foreign towns

The names of many cities throughout the world differ in German from English; these are the most important; sometimes the difference is merely one of spelling. Some are spelt as in English, and are thus not given here, but are pronounced differently in German, e.g. **Pa'ris**, **Stockholm** (pron. shtockholm).

<b>Ant'werpen</b>	Antwerp	<b>Brügge</b>	Bruges
<b>A'then</b>	Athens	<b>Brüssel</b>	Brussels
<b>Bagdad</b>	Baghdad	<b>Bukarest</b>	Bucharest
<b>Belgrad</b>	Belgrade	<b>Damaskus</b>	Damascus
<b>Breslau</b>	Wroclaw	<b>Danzig</b>	Gdansk

<b>Den Haag</b>	The Hague	<b>Nizza</b>	Nice
<b>Flo'renz</b>	Florence	<b>Ost'ende</b>	Ostend
<b>Genf</b>	Geneva	<b>Peking</b>	Beijing
<b>Kairo</b>	Cairo	<b>Piräus</b>	Pireus
<b>Kalkutta</b>	Calcutta	<b>Pjôngjang</b>	Pyongyang
<b>Kanton</b>	Canton	<b>Prag</b>	Prague
<b>Kapstadt</b>	Cape Town	<b>Pressburg</b>	Bratislava
<b>Karatschi</b>	Karachi	<b>Rangun</b>	Rangoon
<b>Khartum</b>	Khartoum	<b>Reval</b>	Talinn
<b>Kiew</b>	Kiev	<b>Riad</b>	Riyadh
<b>Königsberg</b>	Kaliningrad	<b>Rom</b>	Rome
<b>Kopenhagen</b>	Copenhagen	<b>Sankt Petersburg</b>	Saint P.
<b>Laibach</b>	Ljubljana	<b>Sevilla</b>	Seville
<b>Lissabon</b>	Lisbon	<b>Singapur</b>	Singapore
<b>Löwen</b>	Louvain	<b>Straßburg</b>	Strasbourg
<b>Lüttich</b>	Liège	<b>'Tanger</b>	Tangiers
<b>Lu'zern</b>	Lucerne	<b>Teheran</b>	Tehran
<b>Mailand</b>	Milan	<b>'Tiflis</b>	Tbilisi
<b>Mexiko-Stadt</b>	M. City	<b>Tokio</b>	Tokyo
<b>Moskau</b>	Moscow	<b>Tripolis</b>	Tripoli
<b>Ne'apel</b>	Naples	<b>Ve'nedig</b>	Venice
<b>Neu-Delhi</b>	New Delhi	<b>Warschau</b>	Warsaw
<b>Nimwegen</b>	Nijmegen	<b>Wilna</b>	Vilnius

### 6.4.3 *Inhabitants of towns*

The male inhabitant of a town is derived by adding *-er* to the name, e.g. Berlin > *der Berliner*, and the female inhabitant is derived by adding *-in* to this, e.g. *die Berlinerin*. The plurals are *die Berliner* and *die Berlinerinnen*

respectively. The adjectival form of such place names also ends in **-er** and is indeclinable, e.g. **der Kölner Dom**, **der Münchner Hauptbahnhof**.

## 6.5 Names of countries (see Appendix I)

### 6.5.1 *Inhabitants of countries*

Nationalities are derived from the names of countries, as in English, e.g. **Norwegen/der Norweger** (Norway/the Norwegian). All nationalities follow one of two patterns – they either end in **-er** or **-e**. Male inhabitants ending in **-er** do not change in the plural and the females add **-in** with a plural in **-innen**, e.g. **England** (England), **der Engländer** (the Englishman), **die Engländer** (the Englishmen/the English [m. & f.]), **die Engländerin** (the English woman), **die Engländerinnen** (the English women/the English [f.]). Male inhabitants ending in **-e** are n-nouns, as are **Ungar** and **Zypriot**; the female equivalent ends in **-in** and is of course not weak, e.g. **Schweden** (Sweden), **der Schwede** (the Swede), **die Schweden** (the Swedes), **die Schwedin** (the Swedish woman), **die Schwedinnen** (the Swedish women).

There is only one exception to these two patterns for the deriving of nationality, namely ‘the German’. **Der Deutsche** is an adjectival noun, the female equivalent consequently being **die Deutsche** (see 6.7). The difference between **der Deutsche** and **der Schwede**, as illustrated here, does not immediately meet the eye, but put the indefinite article in front of them and you see the difference, e.g. **ein Schwede** but **ein Deutscher**. The same happens with **viele**, for example: **viele Schweden** (many Swedes) but **viele Deutsche** (many Germans); **viele Schwedinnen** (many Swedish women) but **viele Deutsche [Frauen]** (many German women).

## 6.6 Feminizing agents

German, unlike English, is inherently sexist because of the existence of grammatical gender. You cannot get around the fact in German that **Maler** (painter) is masculine, whereas its English equivalent can refer to a person of either sex who paints. The female form of professions, like that of nationalities (see 6.5.1), must be derived from the male form. To do so you simply add **-in** to the male form, e.g. **der Maler** > **die Malerin**, **der Journalist** > **die Journalistin**, **der Sekretär** > **die Sekretärin**. Where the male form is an n-noun ending in **-e**, the **-e** is replaced by **-in**, e.g. **der Beamte** >

die **Beamtin** (civil servant). There are a few traditionally female professions where this has led to alternative forms, e.g. **die Krankenschwester** (nurse [f.]), **der Krankenpfleger** (nurse [m.]), which of course can give rise to **die Krankenpflegerin**.

If referring to a mixed group of males and females of a given profession or nationality, the masculine form traditionally prevails, e.g.

**Alle Lehrer an dieser Schule kriegen nächsten Montag frei.**

All teachers at this school are getting next Monday off.

**Alle Polen kaufen gern in Deutschland ein.**

All Poles like shopping in Germany.

In this politically correct age it is most usual when addressing mixed groups of a given profession to use both the male and female forms and to mention the females first, e.g.

**Liebe Lehrerinnen und Lehrer** (at the beginning of a speech)

Dear teachers

In writing, the following inclusive form is used with professions: **LehrerInnen**. The above introduction to a speech might well have been written **Liebe LehrerInnen** in a letter, but if read aloud this must be read as **Liebe Lehrerinnen und Lehrer**.

See indefinite pronouns (7.7) for a further example of masculine forms predominating in German due to grammatical gender.

## 6.7 Adjectival nouns

An adjectival noun is a noun formed from an adjective. This is done first and foremost with adjectives referring to male and female beings. You can express, for example, 'a blind man' in one of two ways, either as **ein blinder Mann** or as **ein Blinder**, where the adjective is capitalized and the noun is understood. Likewise with 'a blind woman', i.e. **eine blinde Frau** or **eine Blinde**. And in the plural 'blind people' can be expressed as **Blinde**, where 'people' is understood. But being in fact adjectives where the following noun is implied, these adjectival nouns are inflected like adjectives, which means that all the above examples may change when preceded by the definite article, e.g. **der Blinde** (the blind man), **die Blinde** (the blind woman), **die Blinden** (the blind). In the plural we do something similar in English, i.e. the blind, the poor, the living etc. Such nouns are derived

from a limited number of adjectives on the whole. Quite a number of such adjectives are derived from past participles (marked with an asterisk) and some from present participles (marked with two asterisks); here is a representative list:

<b>der/die Alte</b>	the old man/woman/person
<b>der/die Arme</b>	the poor man/woman/person
<b>der/die Angeklagte*</b>	the accused
<b>der/die Angestellte*</b>	the employee
<b>der/die Anwesende**</b>	the person present, bystander
<b>der/die Arbeitslose</b>	the unemployed man/woman/person
<b>der Beamte<sup>1</sup></b>	the official
<b>der/die Bekannte*</b>	the acquaintance
<b>der/die Deutsche<sup>2</sup></b>	the German
<b>der/die Erwachsene*</b>	the adult/grown-up
<b>der/die Fremde</b>	the stranger
<b>der/die Gefangene*</b>	the prisoner
<b>der/die Kranke</b>	the sick man/woman/person (patient)
<b>der/die Reiche</b>	the rich man/woman/person
<b>der/die Reisende**</b>	the traveller
<b>der/die Schuldige</b>	the guilty man/woman/person
<b>der/die Tote</b>	the dead man/woman/person
<b>der/die Verwandte*</b>	the relative

Notes:

- 1 The feminine of this word is not an adjectival noun but a normal noun ending in *-in*, e.g. *die Beamtin* (female official).
- 2 Of all nationalities only 'the German' is expressed by an adjectival noun (see 6.5.1).

**6.7.1 Neuter adjectival nouns**

There is another small category of adjectival nouns that are neuter. These do not refer to people, like those above, but usually refer to abstract concepts, e.g. **das Gute/Schlechte/Blöde daran** (the good/bad/stupid thing about it). Such neuter adjectival nouns commonly follow the impersonal pronouns **alles**, **etwas**, **nichts**, **viel** and **wenig**, weak adjectival endings (see 8.1.1) being used after **alles** and strong adjectival endings (see 8.1.3) after all the others, e.g.

**Ich habe schon alles Mögliche probiert.**

I've already tried everything possible.

**Auf wiedersehen. Alles Gute.**

Goodbye. All the best.

**Das ist nichts Neues/etwas Besonderes.**

That's nothing new/something special.

**Er hatte viel/wenig Positives zu berichten.**

He had a lot of/few positive things to report.

Such forms occasionally occur in other contexts too, e.g. **Gehacktes** (minced meat). The ending varies according to the determiner in front of it because, remember, it has the meaning of a noun but the form of an adjective, e.g.

**Dieses Gehackte riecht nicht gut./Ich muss noch Gehacktes fürs Abendessen kaufen.**

This mince doesn't smell right./I still have to buy mince for dinner.

**6.8 Compound nouns**

As mentioned under 2.4, German does not hyphenate compound nouns but is happy to join the words together, even though this may lead to what seem like ridiculously long words, e.g. **Balkonsonnenbader** (balcony sunbather), **Hupverbotsbeachter** (someone who observes the prohibition on tooting). When nouns are joined together in this way, they take the gender of the final element, e.g. **die Küche** (kitchen), **der Tisch** (table), **der Küchentisch** (kitchen table).

The above examples also illustrate a complication in forming such compounds for which it is unfortunately not possible to formulate prescriptive rules. **Balkonsonnenbader** is formed from the nouns **Balkon** +

**Sonne + Bader**, **Küchentisch** from **Küche + Tisch** and **Hupverbotsbeachter** from **Hup + Verbot + Beachter**. Note the medial **n** in the first two and the medial **s** in the last example. These sounds are inserted in countless such compounds. Native speakers can hear where they are required but it is very difficult to formulate rules that will be of help to non-native speakers. About the only thing that can be said with a reasonable degree of certainty is that if a word ends in **-e**, it will take an **n** when another word is joined to it, as illustrated in the two examples above. As for where **s** is required in compounds, only this can be said: when a noun ends in **-heit/-keit** or **-ung**, an **s** must be inserted, e.g. **Gelegenheitsarbeit** (casual work), **Zeitungszar** (media baron). On rare occasions it is **-es-** that is inserted, e.g. **Jahreszeit** (season), **Meeresspiegel** (sea level). Otherwise, as far as **s** is concerned, you will simply have to observe and copy.

For compounds like **der Rotwein** (red wine), where German prefixes the adjective to the noun rather than inflecting it as an attributive adjective, see 8.1.5.1.

## 6.9 Nouns in apposition (see 4.6)

# Pronouns

As pronouns by definition stand in for nouns and nouns are subject to case (see 4.1), so are pronouns. The following sorts of pronouns occur in both English and German: personal pronouns (e.g. I, me), possessive pronouns (e.g. my/mine), reflexive pronouns (e.g. myself), demonstrative pronouns (e.g. this, that), relative pronouns (e.g. the man who/that ...), interrogative pronouns (e.g. who, which, what), indefinite pronouns (e.g. someone, several). Each category of pronoun has its own complexities and they are looked at individually in this chapter.

## 7.1 Personal pronouns

Personal pronouns consist of subject pronouns (nominative case), object pronouns (accusative case) and indirect object pronouns (dative case). This is the full paradigm of forms, but the three categories are dealt with separately below.

N	<b>ich</b>	<b>du</b>	<b>er</b>	<b>sie</b>	<b>es</b>	<b>wir</b>	<b>ihr</b>	<b>Sie</b>	<b>sie</b>
A	<b>mich</b>	<b>dich</b>	<b>ihn</b>	<b>sie</b>	<b>es</b>	<b>uns</b>	<b>euch</b>	<b>Sie</b>	<b>sie</b>
D	<b>mir</b>	<b>dir</b>	<b>ihm</b>	<b>ihr</b>	<b>ihm</b>	<b>uns</b>	<b>euch</b>	<b>Ihnen</b>	<b>ihnen</b>

### 7.1.1 Subject or nominative pronouns

The subject pronouns are:

**ich** (I), **du** (you), **er** (he), **sie** (she), **es** (it), **wir** (we), **ihr** (you), **Sie** (you), **sie** (they)

**Ich** is referred to as the first person singular, **du** as the second person singular (familiar), **er/sie/es** as the third persons singular, **wir** as the first



person plural, **ihr** as the second person plural (familiar), **Sie** as the second person singular and plural (polite) and **sie** as the third person plural.

**7.1.1.1** Second person subject pronouns

**Sie** meaning ‘you’ (polite) is derived historically from **sie** meaning ‘they’ (it is akin to the so-called royal ‘we’). It is capitalized to distinguish it from **sie** in writing. No distinction between the two is made in speech where intonation and context always make the distinction clear, e.g. **Wohnen Sie schon lange in Deutschland?** (Have you lived in Germany long?). Theoretically, in speech this could mean ‘Have they lived in Germany long?’ but the circumstances of the conversation would make it obvious what is intended.

You will notice that German has three words for ‘you’, **du**, **ihr** and **Sie**. English is peculiar in having just one word. **Du** is used when addressing children, animals, relatives and close friends, i.e. people whom you normally address by their first or given name. God is also addressed as **du** in prayer. **Du** is regarded as the familiar form of address.

The plural of **du** is **ihr**, e.g.

**Gehst du jetzt nach Hause, Peter?**

Are you going home now, Peter?

**Geht ihr jetzt nach Hause?**

Are you (more than one person) going home now?

In colloquial English you often hear things like ‘you all’, ‘youse’, ‘you guys’ or ‘the two/three of you’ where the speaker is attempting to fill the void of a plural form of ‘you’ in the language. These are all expressed by **ihr** or **Sie** (see below) in German.

When addressing strangers or acquaintances with whom you are not (yet) on Christian name terms, **Sie**, which is used for both singular and plural, is the appropriate form; it is regarded as the polite or non-familiar form of address, e.g.

**Gehen Sie jetzt nach Hause, Frau Meyer?**

Are you going home now, Mrs Meyer?

Normally the use of a given name and **du** go hand in hand, but there can be situations, for example in the workplace, where you know someone well as a colleague but do not regard the person as a close friend, so you might use a combination of the given name and **Sie**, e.g.

**Sylvia, wären Sie bitte so nett, mir hiermit zu helfen?**

Sylvia, would you be so kind as to help me with this please?

The point at which a friendship changes from a **Sie** to a **du** basis is a culturally significant moment. As an English speaker you will find it difficult to judge when the appropriate time has come to suggest to an acquaintance that you feel the friendship has progressed to this point, so leave it up to the German to make the move, especially if s/he is significantly older than you. The ice may be broken by the person saying something like, **Sag mal du zu mir!** (Call me du) or **Ich heiße übrigens Gerhard** (By the way, my name is Gert; in other words, use my first name from now on and thus also stop using the **Sie** form).

There are gradations of familiarity which can require the one form of address or the other. The above description will cover the majority of situations you are likely to find yourself in, but, for example, if you were in conversation with someone you didn't know, and were thus using the **Sie** form, and the conversation turned nasty and abusive, the politeness of **Sie** might well be dropped and **du** resorted to in combination with suitable expletives, e.g.

**Du Schwein/Arschloch!**

You pig/arsehole!

These are subtleties of the use of **du**, **ihr** and **Sie** which you will become more comfortable with after some exposure to the living language. Even Germans can be a bit unsure of the appropriate form of address in certain situations. If you have already learnt another European language in which such distinctions are made, you will find the concept very similar, if not identical, in German.

**7.1.1.2 Use of **man** to render 'you'**

Be careful when rendering a 'you' that does not refer directly to the person you are talking to, but means in fact 'one'; in such a situation German uses 'one', i.e. **man** (see 7.7.2 and 10.4.7), e.g.

**Wenn man weniger isst, nimmt man nicht zu.**

If you eat less you don't put on weight.

Compare the following that is addressed directly to someone:

**Wenn du weniger essen würdest, würdest du nicht zunehmen.**

If you ate less, you would not put on weight.

### 7.1.1.3 Use of subject pronouns where English uses object pronouns

In contexts like ‘Who’s that at the door?’ where the most natural sounding answer in English is ‘Me’, an object pronoun, German requires a subject or nominative pronoun, i.e. **ich**. The alternative ‘It’s me’ (as no one really ever says ‘It is I’, as purists might insist) is in German **Ich bin es**; likewise ‘It’s him/us/them’ etc. is **Er ist es./Wir sind es./Sie sind es** etc.

Similarly, in comparatives of the sort ‘He is taller than me’, which is everyday English for the puristic ‘He is taller than I (am)/you (are)’, German can only express it in the latter way, i.e. **Er ist größer als ich/du**. Likewise, ‘He is just as tall as me/you’, **Er ist genau so groß wie ich/du**.

In English, object pronouns are colloquially used in the following idiom, but in German only subject pronouns are possible:

**Wenn ich du/er wäre, ...**

If I were you/him ... (= If I were he ...)

Where a pronoun is uttered in isolation in response to a question, you have to imagine the unuttered sentence of which it is theoretically part and use the appropriate case form, e.g.

**A: Wer hat ihm geholfen? B: Ich.**

A: Who helped him? B: Me (= I [did]).

**A: Wem hat er das Geld gegeben? B: Mir.**

A: Who did he give the money to? B: Me.

### 7.1.1.4 The use of subject pronouns with the six persons of the verb

When conjugating a verb in German (see 10.1.1), you derive the six persons of the verb from the infinitive; the present tense of **machen**, for example, looks like this:

<b>ich mache</b>	<b>wir machen</b>
<b>du machst</b>	<b>ihr macht</b>
<b>er macht</b>	<b>sie machen</b>

In so doing, it is understood that **sie macht** and **es macht**, both being third persons, will follow the **er** form, and **Sie machen** will follow the **sie** (plural) form, so that although there are in fact nine persons of the verb if you include **sie**, **es** and **Sie**, for the sake of brevity only six are usually given.

Remember that ‘it’ as a third person subject pronoun is not necessarily

simply *es*; it may be *er* or *sie* if relating back to a masculine or feminine noun respectively, e.g.

**A: Was hast du mit dem Hammer gemacht? B: Er liegt auf dem Tisch.**

A: What have you done with the hammer? B: It is on the table.

**A: Mach die Tür bitte zu! B: Sie ist schon zu.**

A: Please shut the door. B: It's already shut.

**7.1.1.5** **Es/dies/das** as subject pronouns referring to nouns of all three genders and plurals

Although 'it' with reference to a preceding noun usually agrees in gender with that noun (i.e. 'it' is rendered by either *er*, *sie* or *es*, see 7.1.1.4), only *es* is used when the verb that follows is *sein* and the predicate of the clause (i.e. that part which follows the verb) contains a noun or an adjective used as a noun, e.g.

**Siehst du diesen Tisch? Es ist ein uralter Tisch./Es ist ein uralter.**

See this table? It is a really old table./It's a really old one.

**Ich trinke Limonade. Es ist herrliche Limonade./Es ist eine herrliche.**

I'm drinking a soft drink. It is a delicious soft drink./It's a delicious one.

**Er hat ein Auto. Es ist ein neues Auto./Es ist ein neues.**

He's got a car. It is a new car. It is a new one.

But if the predicate of the clause contains an adjective, then *er*, *sie* or *es* must be used, depending on the gender of the noun to which the 'it' refers, e.g.

**Siehst du diesen Tisch? Er ist uralt.**

See this table? It is really old.

**Ich trinke Limonade. Sie ist herrlich.**

I'm drinking a soft drink. It is delicious.

**Er hat ein Auto. Es ist neu.**

He has got a car. It is new.

But further still, this use of *es* is not limited to the above. It is also used with reference to plural antecedents, thereby rendering 'they' and being followed by a plural verb, *sind*, e.g.

**Wir haben beide einen neuen Wagen.**

We have both got a new car.

**Es sind ganz teure Wagen./Es sind ganz teure.**

They are quite expensive cars./They are quite expensive ones.

**Sie sind ganz teuer.**

They are quite expensive.

In a similar way **dies** (this/these) and **das** (that/those) are also used, e.g.

**Diese Leute kenne ich sehr gut.**

I know these people very well.

**Dies/das sind sehr nette Leute.**

These/those are very nice people.

Compare:

**Es sind sehr nette Leute.**

They are very nice people.

Note too **Das/dies ist sein Vater** (That/this is his father) where **das** and **dies** are used regardless of the gender of the noun that follows the verb.

The above use of **es** instead of **er/sie** (he/she) or **sie** (they) also extends to people, but in this case the use of **es** instead of **er/sie** or **sie** is optional, although in the singular **er/sie** are more usual than **es**, but in the plural **es** is more usual than **sie**, e.g.

**Seine Mutter lebt noch. Es/sie ist eine alte Frau. (sie more usual)**

His mother is still alive. She is an old lady.

**Siehst du die Kinder dort? Es/sie sind meine Kinder. (es more usual)**

See those kids there? They're my kids.

For those who have learnt French, this use of **es** described here is identical to that of **ce** versus **il** or **elle** in French.

*Note:* See 10.4.5 and 10.4.6 for use of **es** as a dummy subject.

**7.1.2 Object or accusative pronouns**

When English makes a distinction between subject and object forms of the personal pronouns, it is in fact employing case, e.g. 'I/me', 'you/you', 'he/him', 'she/her', 'it/it', 'we/us', 'you/you', 'they/them'. To say 'I see him', and

not 'I see he', is to make a grammatical distinction between a subject and an object form of the pronoun or, in other words, to employ case. English is inconsistent here since in the case of 'you' and 'it' no such distinction is made. Compare the German, where not all persons make a distinction either, but context always makes the distinction clear as it does in English, e.g.

**ich/mich, du/dich, er/ihn, sie/sie, es/es, wir/uns, ihr/euch, Sie/Sie, sie/sie**

**Sie hat mich in der Stadt getroffen.**

She met me in town.

**Ich habe sie in der Stadt getroffen.**

I met her in town.

### 7.1.2.1 Use of object pronouns with certain prepositions

These accusative forms of the personal pronouns are also used after certain prepositions (see 12.1 and 12.3).

### 7.1.3 Indirect object or dative pronouns

English makes no distinction between direct and indirect object pronouns. In other words, the paradigm of personal pronouns is only two-tiered, i.e.

I	you	he	she	it	we	you	they
me	you	him	her	it	us	you	them

But in German the paradigm is three-tiered as German distinguishes between 'I', 'me' and 'to me' etc., where 'to me' is referred to as the indirect object or the dative, i.e.

N	<b>ich</b>	<b>du</b>	<b>er</b>	<b>sie</b>	<b>es</b>	<b>wir</b>	<b>ihr</b>	<b>Sie</b>	<b>sie</b>
A	<b>mich</b>	<b>dich</b>	<b>ihn</b>	<b>sie</b>	<b>es</b>	<b>uns</b>	<b>euch</b>	<b>Sie</b>	<b>sie</b>
D	<b>mir</b>	<b>dir</b>	<b>ihm</b>	<b>ihr</b>	<b>ihm</b>	<b>uns</b>	<b>euch</b>	<b>Ihnen</b>	<b>ihnen</b>

**Er hat mich im Kino gesehen.**

He saw me in the cinema.

**Er hat mir fünf Euro gegeben.**

He gave me five euros.

Rephrasing the second sentence as 'He gave five euros to me' reveals the 'me' in the second sentence as in fact meaning 'to me', which is an indirect

object and thus requires the dative form of the appropriate pronoun. Compare:

**Sie hat ihm einen Brief geschickt.**

She sent him a letter. (= She sent a letter to him.) (dative), *but*

**Sie hat ihn nach Hause geschickt.**

She sent him home. (accusative)

#### 7.1.3.1 Use of indirect object pronouns with certain prepositions

These dative forms of the personal pronouns are also used after certain prepositions (see 12.2 and 12.3).

#### 7.1.4 **Prepositional adverbs** (i.e. **da(r)-** + preposition and **hier-** + preposition)

The subject and object pronouns of the third person singular and plural are as follows:

	<i>M</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>Pl</i>
<i>A</i>	<b>ihn</b>	<b>sie</b>	<b>es</b>	<b>sie</b>
<i>D</i>	<b>ihm</b>	<b>ihr</b>	<b>ihm</b>	<b>ihnen</b>

When 'it' and 'them' with reference to things, as opposed to people, are preceded by a preposition, the above pronominal forms cannot be used; in other words **in es**, **auf es** etc. are not possible at all, and **in ihn**, **auf ihm** etc. and **in sie**, **auf ihr** etc. are only possible if referring to a person. German uses the so-called prepositional adverb in such cases, formed by combining **da** (there, an adverb) with the preposition in question, e.g. **damit** (with it/them), **dahinter** (behind it/them). When the preposition begins with a vowel, an **r** is inserted to aid pronunciation, e.g. **darauf** (on it/them), **darin** (in it/them), e.g.

**Ich habe Knoblauch mit diesem Messer geschnitten, also kann ich das Brot nicht damit schneiden.**

I have cut garlic with this knife so I can't cut the bread with it.

**Sie konnte ihre Brille nicht finden, denn sie saß darauf.**

She couldn't find her glasses because she was sitting on them.

**Unsere Nachbarn sind in vielen Ländern gewesen und wollen jetzt ein Buch darüber schreiben.**

Our neighbours have been in lots of countries and now want to write a book about them/about it.

The forms with an *r* in them very commonly drop the vowel in **dar-** in colloquial speech, e.g. **drauf, dran, drüber**.

The topic of the prepositional adverb does not end there, however. Forms like **damit, darin, darauf** etc. do not just render ‘with it/them’, ‘in it/them’, ‘on it/them’ etc. but also translate ‘with that/those’, ‘in that/those’, ‘on that/those’ etc., e.g.

**Damit kann man keine Brötchen schneiden.**

You can't cut breadrolls with that/those.

And just as the adverb **da** (there) replaces the pronouns ‘that/those’ in such cases, so too does the adverb **hier** (here) replace **dies** (this/these), where the pronouns ‘this/these’ follow a preposition, e.g.

**Wie soll ich um gottes Willen hiermit das Brot schneiden?**

How am I meant to cut the bread with this/these for heaven's sake?

**Setz dich hierauf!**

Sit on this.

The only prepositions which cannot be combined with **da-** and **hier-** are those that take the genitive (see 12.4) as well as **außer, gegenüber, ohne** and **seit**.

To understand how these constructions work in German, compare the use of similar constructions with ‘there/here’ + preposition in archaic English, e.g. ‘He's cut the breadrolls therewith’, which can stand for either ‘with it’ in the case of one knife or ‘with them’ in the case of several knives. A very similar construction occurs with **wo(r)-** (see 7.5 and 7.6.3).

**7.1.5** *Pronominal use of articles and other determiners*

Articles, both definite and indefinite, as well as other determiners followed by nouns are dealt with under 5.5, 7.7.1 and 8.1.4. But all these words can also be used as pronouns, in which case the noun to which they refer is not mentioned but understood, and thus the gender and case of the implied noun must be observed.

The **der/die/das** paradigm (see 5.1), in addition to translating ‘the’, can also be used to translate ‘he/she/it’ in the nom., acc. and dat., especially when there is some emphasis, in which case they normally stand at the beginning of their clause; this is particularly common in spoken German, e.g.



**A: Kennst du Johann Müller? B: Ja, den kenne ich sehr gut.**

A: Do you know Johann Müller? B: Yes, I know him very well.

**A: Sind die Mayers verreist? B: Ja, die sind zur Zeit in Sizilien.**

A: Are the Mayers away? B: Yes, they are in Sicily at the moment.

## 7.2 Possessives

The following constitute the possessives in English:

my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their

Because these words stand in front of nouns they are, strictly speaking, possessive adjectives, not possessive pronouns, but derived from them are the true possessive pronouns – they are pronouns because they can stand alone replacing a noun; in English these are:

mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs

The distinction between the two sets of forms is as follows:

‘This is my book./This is mine.’ or ‘My book is blue./Mine is blue.’

‘That is his dog./This is his.’ or ‘His dog is brown./His is brown.’

In expressing these forms in German, you need to take note of both gender and case.

### 7.2.1 The possessive adjectives

**mein** (my), **dein** (your), **sein** (his), **ihr** (her), **sein** (its), **unser** (our),  
**euer** (your), **Ihr** (your), **ihr** (their)

The endings of these possessive adjectives are exactly the same as those for **ein** (see 5.3 and 5.4), except that these also have plural endings of course (i.e. ‘my books’ is possible whereas ‘a books’ is not); the plural endings are identical to those of **der/die/das**, i.e.

	<i>M</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>Pl</i>
<i>N</i>	<b>mein</b>	<b>meine</b>	<b>mein</b>	<b>meine</b>
<i>A</i>	<b>meinen</b>	<b>meine</b>	<b>mein</b>	<b>meine</b>
<i>G</i>	<b>meines</b>	<b>meiner</b>	<b>meines</b>	<b>meiner</b>
<i>D</i>	<b>meinem</b>	<b>meiner</b>	<b>meinem</b>	<b>meinen</b>

You must apply these endings to all the possessive adjectives given above, e.g.

**Er kennt unseren Vater nicht.**

He doesn't know our father.

**Ich habe den Namen ihres Lehrers vergessen.**

I have forgotten her/their teacher's name.

Just as context usually makes it clear whether *sie* means 'she' or 'they' (see 7.1.1), whether *ihr* means 'her' or 'their' is normally revealed by context too.

**7.2.2 Possessive pronouns**

The paradigm of the possessive pronoun differs from that of the possessive adjective given in 7.2.1 as follows – the three differences are underlined:

	<i>M</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>Pl</i>
<i>N</i>	<u>meiner</u>	meine	mein(e) <u>s</u>	meine
<i>A</i>	meinen	meine	mein(e) <u>s</u>	meine
<i>G</i>	meines	meiner	meines	meiner
<i>D</i>	meinem	meiner	meinem	meinen

Note how the two paradigms alternate:

**Dies ist mein Buch./Dies ist mein(e)s.**

This is my book./This is mine.

**Mein Buch ist blau./Mein(e)s ist blau.**

My book is blue./Mine is blue.

**Das ist sein Hund./Das ist seiner.**

That is his dog./This is his.

**Sein Hund ist braun./Seiner ist braun.**

His dog is brown./His is brown.

**Ich habe heute Morgen deinen Hund im Park hier gegenüber gesehen, aber meinen habe ich noch nicht finden können.**

I saw your dog in the park opposite this morning but I still haven't been able to find mine.

In speech it is usual to drop the *e* from the ending of the nom. and acc. neuter forms, which is also not uncommon in less formal writing.

A phrase such as 'a friend of mine' uses the independent possessive in English, but the dative personal pronoun in German, e.g. *ein Freund von mir*; compare *einer meiner Freunde* (one of my friends).

### 7.2.2.1 Alternative forms of the possessive pronoun

In elevated style two alternative paradigms of the possessive pronoun occur which you will merely need to recognize, but will never need to use. Firstly there is the **der meinige/deinige/seinige/ihrige/unsrige/eurige/ihrige** paradigm where the forms in **-ige** are regarded as adjectives and thus take the endings of an adjective after the definite article (see 8.1), e.g.

	<i>M</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>Pl</i>
<i>N</i>	<b>der meinige</b>	<b>die meinige</b>	<b>das meinige</b>	<b>die meinigen</b>
<i>A</i>	<b>den meinigen</b>	<b>die meinige</b>	<b>das meinige</b>	<b>die meinigen</b>
<i>G</i>	<b>des meinigen</b>	<b>der meinigen</b>	<b>des meinigen</b>	<b>der meinigen</b>
<i>D</i>	<b>dem meinigen</b>	<b>der meinigen</b>	<b>dem meinigen</b>	<b>den meinigen</b>

**Seine ganzen Verwandten sind nach Australien ausgewandert, aber die ihrigen wohnen alle noch in der Bundesrepublik.**

All of his relatives have migrated to Australia but hers still all live in Germany.

The following paradigm exists as an alternative to the above but it too is limited to formal contexts and merely needs to be recognized, not used:

	<i>M</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>Pl</i>
<i>N</i>	<b>der meine</b>	<b>die meine</b>	<b>das meine</b>	<b>die meinen</b>
<i>A</i>	<b>den meinen</b>	<b>die meine</b>	<b>das meine</b>	<b>die meinen</b>
<i>G</i>	<b>des meinen</b>	<b>der meinen</b>	<b>des meinen</b>	<b>der meinen</b>
<i>D</i>	<b>dem meinen</b>	<b>der meinen</b>	<b>dem meinen</b>	<b>den meinen</b>

Similarly **der deine/seine/ihre/unsere/eure/Ihre/ihre**, e.g.

**Ihre vier Kinder sind alle Mädchen, die seinen aber alle Jungen.**

Her four children are all girls but his are all boys.

## 7.3 Reflexive pronouns

Reflexive pronouns are used primarily with certain verbs when the doers of those verbs are regarded as performing the action on themselves, e.g. **sich waschen** (to wash [oneself], see 7.3.1), where the reflexive ‘oneself’ is superfluous in English but obligatory in German. The verb **sich waschen** is called a reflexive verb and it is conjugated as follows with each person employing the reflexive pronoun after it:

**ich wasche mich**  
**du wäschst dich**  
**er wäscht sich**

**wir waschen uns**  
**ihr wascht euch**  
**sie waschen sich**

All forms are identical to accusative pronouns except for the third person singular and plural where **sich** means ‘himself’, ‘herself’, ‘itself’, ‘oneself’ and ‘themselves’. The non-familiar second person singular and plural form is of course **Sie waschen sich** where **sich** means ‘yourself/ yourselves’.

There is an emphatic form of the reflexive pronoun which consists of the above forms followed by **selbst**, i.e. **mich selbst**, **dich selbst**, **sich selbst** etc. You need to be careful here as these forms closely resemble the unemphatic reflexive forms in English, i.e. ‘myself’, ‘yourself’ etc., but in German these emphatic forms are only used when a contrast is made between performing the action on someone else and on yourself, e.g.

**Er rasiert jeden Morgen seinen Opa, bevor er sich selbst rasiert.**

He shaves his granddad every morning before he shaves himself.

The use of ‘himself’ here in English, rather than omitting the reflexive altogether, shows that there is an emphasis, which means that **selbst** must be employed in German. Compare:

**Er rasiert sich nicht jeden Tag.**

He doesn't shave every day. (reflexive superfluous in English)

**Er hat sich in Italien sehr amüsiert.**

He enjoyed himself a great deal in Italy. (reflexive obligatory in English)

**7.3.1 Dative reflexive pronouns**

There are also dative forms of the reflexive pronouns, i.e. **mir**, **dir**, **sich**, **uns**, **euch**, **sich**. As you can see, these differ only slightly from the accusative forms in 7.3, i.e. **mich**, **dich**, **sich**, **uns**, **euch**, **sich**. In fact only the first and second persons singular differ. These dative forms are used in two instances.

Firstly, when using an optionally reflexive verb, i.e. a verb like **waschen** or **rasieren**, which expresses actions that can be performed on others (in which case they are used as normal transitive verbs and require no reflexive pronoun), the dative form of the reflexive pronoun is required if the verb has a direct object, e.g.

**Ich wasche mich jeden Tag.** (no object mentioned)

I wash every day.

**Ich wasche mir die Hände mindestens zehnmal am Tag. (die Hände = object)**

I wash my hands at least ten times a day.

But it is only with **ich** and **du** as subjects of the verb that a distinction is made. Look at the same two sentences with **er** as their subject:

**Er wäscht sich jeden Tag.**

He washes every day.

**Er wäscht sich die Hände mindestens zehnmal am Tag.**

He washes his hands at least ten times a day.

The second use of the dative of the reflexive is dealt with under 7.3.2.

### 7.3.2 Reflexive pronouns used independently of verbs

It is possible for reflexive pronouns to be used after a limited number of prepositions referring back to the subject of the sentence, e.g.

**Ich war außer mir vor Angst./Er war außer sich vor Angst.**

I was beside myself with fear./He was beside himself with fear.

**Ich habe kein Taschentuch bei mir./Er hat kein Geld bei sich.**

I haven't got a handkerchief on me./He hasn't got any money on him.

### 7.3.3 Use of *selbst/selber* to render English reflexives

Where an English reflexive pronoun (i.e. myself, yourself, himself/herself/itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves) is used independently of a reflexive verb and expresses an emphatic 'myself' etc., German does not use reflexive pronouns but rather *selbst* or *selber* – the two are synonymous and interchangeable, e.g.

**A: Soll ich dir helfen? B: Danke, ich kann es selbst/selber machen.**

A: Shall I help you? B: No thanks, I can do it myself.

**Er hat den Brief selber geschrieben.**

He wrote the letter himself.

## 7.4 Demonstrative pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns, which are identical in form to demonstrative adjectives, are dealt with under articles and other determiners (see 5.1 and 5.2).

## 7.5 Interrogative pronouns

These pronouns are used when asking questions. They must not be confused with ‘who/whose/whom’ as relative pronouns (see 7.6). ‘Whom’, which is more usually ‘who’ in spoken English, is a vestige of the accusative/dative, a distinction which is of course still made in German, e.g.

### **Wer wohnt in diesem Haus?**

Who lives in this house?

### **Wen hast du im Park gesehen?**

Who(m) did you see in the park?

### **Wessen Tochter ist sie?**

Whose daughter is she?

### **Wem hat er den Brief gegeben?**

Who(m) did he give the letter to?/To whom did he give the letter?

N	<b>wer</b>	who
A	<b>wen</b>	who(m)
G	<b>wessen</b>	whose
D	<b>wem</b>	(to) who(m)

Although **wessen** literally means ‘whose’, when asking about possession it is more usual in German to use **gehören** + dat. (to belong to) if context permits it, e.g.

### **Wem gehört diese Handtasche?**

Whose handbag is this? (lit. Who does this handbag belong to?)

Use of these interrogative pronouns is not limited to direct questions but also applies to indirect questions, in which case the pronouns act like subordinating conjunctions and relative pronouns by sending the finite verb in their clause to the end of that clause, e.g.

### **Er fragte mich, wer in diesem Haus wohnt.**

He asked me who lives in this house.

**Ich weiß nicht, wem diese Handtasche gehört.**

I don't know who this handbag belongs to/whose handbag this is.

Was (what) is also an interrogative pronoun, e.g.

**Was hat sie in der Hand?**

What has she got in her hand?

**Ich habe keine Ahnung, was sie in der Hand hat.**

I have no idea what she has in her hand.

Was, unlike English 'what', cannot be used in combination with a preposition, which in English is usually placed at the end of the clause. Where this occurs in English, German uses an adverbial construction with **wo(r)-**, the **r** being inserted when the preposition begins with a vowel. In so doing, prepositions are not left dangling at the end of a sentence in German as is so often the case in English, e.g.

**Womit spielen die Kinder?**

What are the kids playing with?

**Worauf wartest du?**

What are you waiting for?

These constructions have parallels in archaic English (compare **da-** under 7.1.4), e.g. 'Wherefore was he not helped?', 'Whereon lieth the snow?'

See 7.6.3 for the use of **wo(r)-** as a relative pronoun.

**7.6 Relative pronouns**

	<i>M</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>Pl</i>
<i>N</i>	<b>der</b>	<b>die</b>	<b>das</b>	<b>die</b>
<i>A</i>	<b>den</b>	<b>die</b>	<b>das</b>	<b>die</b>
<i>G</i>	<b>dessen</b>	<b>deren</b>	<b>dessen</b>	<b>deren</b>
<i>D</i>	<b>dem</b>	<b>der</b>	<b>dem</b>	<b>denen</b>

A relative pronoun introduces a subordinate clause, called a relative clause, that relates back to a noun just mentioned (the antecedent) in order to add extra information about that noun; it is commonly embedded in a main clause, which is shown in German by placing commas both before and after it, while the use of commas with relative clauses in English is inconsistent, e.g.

**Der Mann, der nebenan wohnt, hat die Absicht nach Amerika auszuwandern.**

The man who lives next-door is intending to emigrate to America.

In the above example the word order in the main clause, i.e. **Der Mann hat die Absicht nach Amerika auszuwandern**, remains untouched by the insertion of the relative clause, **der nebenan wohnt**. The finite verb in the main clause remains in second position, as it would without the addition of a relative clause, whereas the verb in the relative clause is in final position, unlike English, but in accordance with it being a form of subordinate clause (see 11.2).

The gender of the relative pronoun is determined by that of the noun which it relates back to, while its case is determined by the grammatical role it is playing in the relative clause. In the above example **der** has been selected from the paradigm as **Mann** is masculine and the relative pronoun **der** is the subject of **wohnt**. But look at the following examples where other case forms occur:

**Mein Nachbar, den ich sehr gern habe, ist Deutscher.**

My neighbour, who(m) I like a great deal, is a German.

**Das ist die Ärztin, deren Sohn in meiner Klasse ist.**

That is the doctor whose son is in my class.

There are several complications in English with regard to relative pronouns that do not exist in German. The relative in English can be either ‘who’ or ‘which’, depending on whether the antecedent is personal or not, or even ‘that’ for both personal and non-personal antecedents. In fact, the relative pronoun is commonly even omitted in English, though only when it is not the subject of its clause, but it can never be omitted in German. All the following English examples can only be rendered in one way in German:

**Das ist nicht der Mann, den ich gestern Abend in der Stadt gesehen habe.**

That is not the man who(m) I saw in town last night.

That is not the man that I saw in town last night.

That is not the man I saw in town last night.

The same applies to non-personal antecedents:

**Dies ist der Tisch, den wir renoviert haben.**

This is the table which we renovated.

This is the table that we renovated.

This is the table we renovated.

You must be careful with omitted ‘thats’ in English. Often an omitted ‘that’ is the subordinating conjunction **dass** (see 11.2), not a relative pronoun, but



in German omission is not possible in either case, e.g. ‘He said (that) he’d do it.’ (see 10.3.1.1 for omission of **dass** with indirect speech).

**7.6.1** *Relative pronouns preceded by prepositions*

Prepositions commonly precede relative pronouns in German, thereby determining the case of that pronoun. It can be difficult to recognize when this is the case as colloquial English normally places the preposition at the end of the clause instead of before the relative pronoun – which is however done in more formal English – and to complicate the issue even further, English commonly drops the relative pronoun altogether despite the presence of a preposition. In German you must always place the preposition before the appropriate relative pronoun at the beginning of the clause and place the finite verb at the end, e.g.

**Ich habe den Stuhl, auf dem du jetzt sitzt, erst heute  
Nachmittag repariert.**

I repaired the chair you’re now sitting on only this afternoon.  
I only repaired the chair which/that you’re now sitting on this afternoon.  
I only repaired the chair on which you’re now sitting this afternoon.

**Die Leute, von denen wir dieses Haus gekauft haben, wohnen  
jetzt in Stade.**

The people we bought this house from now live in Stade.  
The people who/that we bought this house from now live in Stade.  
The people from whom we bought this house now live in Stade.

Note that ‘whose’ is commonly avoided in English these days when the antecedent is non-personal, a contorted construction with ‘of which’ being preferred, but in German use of **dessen** and **deren** is purely dependent on the gender of the antecedent and whether it is personal or non-personal is irrelevant, e.g.

**Die Häuser, deren Dächer im Sturm weggeweht sind, werden  
sofort repariert.**

The houses whose roofs blew away in the storm will be repaired immediately.  
The houses of which the roofs blew away in the storm will be repaired immediately.

It is stylistically preferable in German not to separate a relative pronoun from its antecedent, although this is sometimes possible – the problem does

not arise in English as past participles and infinitives are not sent to the end of their clause, e.g.

**Mein Sohn hat das Fahrrad verkauft, das ich ihm zum Geburtstag geschenkt habe.**

**Mein Sohn hat das Fahrrad, das ich ihm zum Geburtstag geschenkt habe, verkauft.** (avoid this although it is possible)  
My son has sold the bicycle which I gave him for his birthday.

### 7.6.2 *Wo as a relative pronoun relating back to place and time*

**Wo**, which literally means ‘where’ (see 11.2), is used in spoken German to replace a preposition + a relative pronoun with reference to a place, but this alternation has a parallel in English too, e.g.

**Die Stadt, wo er jahrelang als Kind gewohnt hat, hat er nie wieder besucht.**

He never again visited the city where he lived as a child.

**Die Stadt, in der er jahrelang als Kind gewohnt hat, hat er nie wieder besucht.**

He never again visited the city in which he lived as a child.

But this use of **wo** does not stop here in German, unlike English. In German it can even be used, once again more in spoken than written German, to relate back to an expression of time, e.g.

**Wir leben jetzt in einer Zeit, wo die Luftverschmutzung immer schlechter wird.**

We are now living in a time in which air pollution is getting worse and worse.

In more formal German this would be expressed with a relative pronoun, e.g.

**Wir leben jetzt in einer Zeit, in der die Luftverschmutzung immer schlechter wird.**

### 7.6.3 *Was and wo(r)- as relative pronouns*

‘Which’ is used in English to relate back to indefinite antecedents that are not nouns with a given gender but indefinite pronouns, and may even be entire clauses. In German **was** is used in such cases, e.g.

**Nicht alles, was er sagt, ist wahr, weißt du?**

Not everything (that) he says is true, you know.

**Die Inflationsrate ist im letzten Jahr gestiegen, was gar nicht gut für die Wirtschaft ist.**

The inflation rate has risen over the last year which is not at all good for the economy. (The antecedent is the whole first clause, i.e. the fact that the inflation rate has risen.)

The relative pronoun **was** above cannot be used in combination with a preposition. Where English uses 'that' or 'which' to refer to an indefinite antecedent in combination with a preposition, German uses **wo(r)** + the appropriate preposition, e.g.

**Das ist etwas, worauf wir sehr lange gewartet haben.**

That is something that/which we waited a very long time for.

That is something we waited a very long time for.

That is something for which we waited a very long time.

#### **7.6.4 Use of participles in extended adjectival phrases in lieu of relative clauses**

In slightly more formal style, and very often in journalese, you might find an avoidance of relative clauses by placing the information usually contained in the relative clause before the noun it refers to, in an extended adjectival phrase. Such phrases always contain a past or present participle (see 10.6), and are only translatable into English by converting them back into relative clauses which often contain a passive (see 10.4), e.g.

**Gestern wurde auf der Ausstellung ein neu entwickeltes Modell vorgestellt.** (past participle)

**Gestern wurde auf der Ausstellung ein Modell vorgestellt, das neu entwickelt worden ist.** (relative clause in passive)

A model was presented at the exhibition yesterday that has been newly developed.

**Ich las eine Kritik über das kürzlich veröffentlichte Buch.** (past participle)

**Ich las eine Kritik über das Buch, das kürzlich veröffentlicht worden war.** (relative clause in passive)

I read a review of the book which had recently been published.

**Sie sah ein in entgegengesetzter Richtung fahrendes Auto.**  
(present participle)

**Sie sah ein Auto, das in entgegengesetzter Richtung fuhr.**  
(relative clause)

She saw a car which was driving in the opposite direction.

**Es handelte sich da um eine nicht zu vermeidende Schwierigkeit.** (present participle)

**Es handelte sich da um eine Schwierigkeit, die nicht zu vermeiden war.** (relative clause, see 10.4.7.c)

It was a matter of a difficulty which could not be avoided.

### **7.6.5 English participial constructions which must be rendered by relative clauses in German**

Under 7.6.4 examples are given of German participial constructions which are rendered by relative clauses in English. There are, however, participial (both past and present) constructions in English which must be rendered by relative clauses in German, e.g.

**Diese Häuser, die in den fünfziger Jahren gebaut worden sind, sind von minderwertiger Qualität.**

These houses built in the fifties are of inferior quality.

This could also be rendered by an adjectival phrase placed before the noun:

**Diese in den fünfziger Jahren gebauten Häuser sind von minderwertiger Qualität.**

**Der Mann, der in der Ecke des Wartezimmers die Zeitung liest, ist sehr krank.**

The man reading the paper in the corner of the waiting room is very sick.

## **7.7 Indefinite pronouns**

- a) Indefinite pronouns like **jeder(mann)** (everybody), **jemand** (somebody) and **niemand** (nobody), although they refer to any person of either gender, require the use of masculine forms of the possessive. The current use of ‘their’ in English to avoid an unwieldy ‘his/her’ is not possible in German, e.g.

**Jeder wollte seine Meinung äußern.**

Everyone wanted to air their opinion.

**Niemand hat seinen Hund mitnehmen dürfen.**

No one was allowed to take their dog with them.

- b) ‘Everyone, everybody’

The most usual word is **jeder**, but it is sometimes found in the fuller form **jedermann**, e.g.

**Das weiß doch jeder.**

Everyone/everybody knows that.

- c) ‘Someone, somebody; anyone, anybody; no one, nobody’

The subtle distinction between ‘someone’ and ‘anyone’ does not exist in German; both are rendered by **jemand**, and when ‘anyone’ is used together with a negative in English, German simply uses **niemand** (nobody) (see 14.2.h), e.g.

**Hast du jemand gesehen?**

Did you see anyone/anybody?

**Ja, ich habe jemand gesehen.**

Yes, I saw someone/somebody.

**Nein, ich habe niemand gesehen.**

No, I didn’t see anyone/anybody. (i.e. I saw nobody/no one.)

‘Anyone’ that means ‘absolutely anyone’ is, however, rendered by **jeder**, e.g.

**Sie redet mit jedem.**

She talks to anyone. (= everyone; see point b above)

**Jemand** and **niemand** also have case forms, although the acc. and dat. forms are only used in more formal style, e.g.

N	<b>jemand</b>	<b>niemand</b>
A	<b>jemanden</b>	<b>niemanden</b>
G	<b>jemand</b> s	<b>niemand</b> s
D	<b>jemandem</b>	<b>niemandem</b>

**Die Polizei hat noch mit niemandem gesprochen.**

The police have not yet spoken to anyone.

**Ich habe jemand's Mütze im Schuppen gefunden.**

I found somebody's cap in the shed.

'Somebody/someone else' is **jemand anders**.

- d) 'Something, anything, nothing' (see 14.2.h)

The situation here is similar to that above: 'something/anything' are rendered by **etwas**, or more colloquially by **was**; 'nothing' is **nichts** or in the spoken language **nix**, e.g.

**Hast du etwas/was gekauft?**

Did you buy anything?

**Ja, ich habe etwas/was gekauft.**

Yes, I bought something.

**Nein, ich habe nichts gekauft.**

No, I didn't buy anything. (i.e. I bought nothing.)

For **etwas** and **nichts** followed by an adjective see 6.7.1.

Be warned that **etwas** is also an adverb meaning 'somewhat', but context always makes this clear as the adjective that follows is not inflected, e.g.

**Ich finde den Anzug etwas teuer.**

I find the suit somewhat expensive.

- e) 'Whoever, whatever'

**Wer ... auch** and **was ... auch** translate the above but be careful with the syntax that they require, as **auch** is placed later in the clause and note the lack of inversion of subject and verb in the second clause of the second example.

**Wer am Theaterstück auch teilnehmen will, ist meinerwegen herzlich willkommen.**

Whoever wants to take part in the play is welcome as far as I'm concerned.

**Was er auch schon beigetragen hat, er kann noch mehr für die Sache tun.**

Whatever he has already contributed, he can do even more for the cause.

Wo(hin) ... auch (wherever) and wann ... auch (whenever), although not pronouns but adverbs, are used in similar constructions.

**7.7.1 Indefinite pronouns also used as determiners**

- a) Other aspects of these indefinite pronouns are dealt with under determiners (see 5.5) and adjectives (see 8.1.4) but here their pronominal functions are dealt with.

When the following words are used independently, i.e. when they are not followed by a noun, but a noun can be inferred, they are pronouns: **alle** (all), **andere** (other), **beide** (both), **einige** (some), **mehrere** (several), **viele** (many), **verschiedene** (various/different) and **wenige** (few). The inferred noun is by necessity plural and these pronouns are inflected for case, e.g.

**Alle (Anwesenden/Gäste) werden gebeten, den Saal zu verlassen.** (nom.)

All (present/guests) are requested to leave the room.

**Einige (Schüler) machen den Ausflug, aber andere nicht.** (nom.)

Some (pupils) are going on the excursion but others aren't.

**Die Namen mehrerer (Teilnehmer) habe ich schon vergessen.** (gen.)

I have already forgotten the names of several (participants).

**In diesem Land ist Alkohol zollfrei, aber in vielen (Ländern) ist das nicht der Fall.** (dat.)

In this country alcohol is duty-free but in many that is not the case.

**Welche** (some, a few) and **die meisten** (most of) can also be used pronominally, e.g.

**A: Ich muss Äpfel kaufen. B: Brauchst du nicht. Ich hab' schon welche gekauft.**

A: I must buy apples. B: You don't need to. I've already bought some/a few.

**Die Bewohner mussten das Gebäude verlassen, aber die meisten wollten es nicht.**

The residents had to leave the building but most (of them) didn't want to.

Another indefinite pronoun worthy of mention here is **ein paar** (some, a few), which contrasts with **ein Paar** (a pair of), e.g.

**Ich habe heute ein Paar Sandalen am Strand gefunden.**

I found a pair of sandals on the beach today.

**A: Hat er überhaupt Freunde? B: Ja, er hat ein paar (neue Freunde gemacht).**

A: Has he got any friends at all? B: Yes, he has a few (has made a few new friends).

b) Beide (both)

**Beide**, in addition to being used as both an indefinite pronoun and a determiner like all the above, can also be used as an adjective after other determiners, e.g.

**A: Wer will also mitkommen, Julia oder Felix? B: Beide möchten mitgehen.**

A: Who wants to come with me, Julia or Felix? B: Both want to go with you.

**Beide Bücher/die beiden Bücher waren teuer.**

Both (the) books were expensive.

This adjectival use of **beide** is also a way of rendering ‘two’, e.g.

**Die beiden Brüder sind früh gestorben.**

The two brothers died young.

There is also a neuter inflected form, **beides**, which is used pronominally with reference to objects, e.g.

**A: Was möchtest du zum Geburtstag – eine Kamera oder einen Videorecorder? B: Beides.**

A: What would you like for your birthday – a camera or a videorecorder? B: Both.

**7.7.2** *The indefinite pronoun man* (see 7.1.1.2 and 10.4.7)

**Man** means ‘one’, but whereas this pronoun generally sounds rather formal in English, it is an everyday word in German, e.g.

**Man muss vorsichtig sein.**

One must be careful. (= You must be careful.)



There are several tricks to watch out for when using **man**. It has case forms and the possessive 'one's' is expressed by **sein**, e.g.

N		<b>man</b>
A		<b>einen</b>
D		<b>einem</b>

**Wenn es einem schlecht geht, findet man oft, dass einen seine Freunde vergessen haben.**

When one is having a hard time one often finds that one's friends have forgotten one.

The appropriate reflexive pronoun to use when **man** is the subject of a reflexive verb is **sich**, e.g.

**Man befindet sich hier in einer Traumwelt.**

One finds oneself in a dreamworld here.

When you learn a reflexive verb in its infinitive form (e.g. **sich amüsieren**), this translates in fact as 'to enjoy oneself' (see 7.3).

Generally speaking, spoken English prefers to use 'you' instead of 'one'. Colloquially German has the possibility of using **du** in the same way, but not because it is felt that **man** sounds too formal (see 7.1.1.2), e.g.

**Du musst in Kairo aufpassen, dass du nicht beraubt wirst.**

You have to be careful in Cairo that you don't get robbed.

**Man muss in Kairo aufpassen, dass man nicht beraubt wird.**

One has to be careful in Cairo that one doesn't get robbed.

See 10.4.7 for how **man** is used to avoid the passive.

# Adjectives

As you will see below, an intricate system of adjectival endings prevails in German. It is perhaps the best example of German as an inflectional language. The following paradigms show how adjectives are inflected or declined and are thus often referred to as adjectival inflections or declensions.

Adjectives are used both predicatively and attributively, as in English. A predicate (also called predicative) adjective is one that does not stand in front of a noun, i.e. it is not used attributively like one standing in front of a noun, e.g. 'His car is red' (a predicate adjective), but 'his red car' (an attributive adjective). Predicate adjectives are invariable, i.e. they do not take endings, thus **Sein Auto ist rot**. But attributive adjectives must agree in gender, number and case with the noun they precede, thus **sein rotes Auto** (neuter, singular, nominative). And here lies another bothersome aspect of German which takes some mastering.

There are three paradigms or sets of adjectival endings that need to be learnt in order to know exactly what the correct ending is for an attributive adjective standing in front of a German noun. There are

- 1 the endings used after **der/die/das** (also called weak endings)
- 2 the endings used after **ein/eine/ein** (also called mixed endings) and
- 3 the unpreceded adjectival endings (also called strong endings).

## 8.1 Rules for inflection

### 8.1.1 The *der/die/das* (weak) endings:

	M	F	N	Pl
N	-e	-e	-e	-en
A	-en	-e	-e	-en
G	-en	-en	-en	-en
D	-en	-en	-en	-en

This set of endings consists of merely an -e or an -en. There is a reason for this. They are used after **der/die/das** and other determiners (see 5.2) that take the same endings as **der/die/das** themselves, i.e. **dieser, jeder, jener, solcher, welcher**. As the determiners themselves have endings that clearly indicate gender, number and case, there is little need for the adjectives that follow them to repeat this information and thus German makes do with either -e or -en, e.g. nom. case **dieser arme Mann, welche alte Frau, jedes brave Kind**; dat. case **diesem armen Mann, welcher alten Frau, jedem braven Kind**. **Solcher** is generally only found before a plural noun in natural sounding German, i.e. **solche guten Leute** (such good people). (See last paragraph in 5.2.)

### 8.1.2 The *ein/eine/ein* (mixed) endings:

	M	F	N	Pl
N	-er	-e	-es	-en
A	-en	-e	-es	-en
G	-en	-en	-en	-en
D	-en	-en	-en	-en

This set of endings is not quite so bland as the first, at least in the nom. and acc., but in the other cases and the plural the endings are identical to each other and to those applying in the set above. Again, there is a reason for this. Look at **ein guter Mann** and **ein gutes Kind** and compare this with **der gute Mann** and **das gute Kind**. The determiner **ein** here, unlike **der** and **das**, makes no distinction between the genders – only the adjective here tells you what the gender of the noun is. But in the genitive and dative cases, there is no difference between the endings in sets 1 and 2 as the determiners, both **der/die/das** and **ein/eine/ein**, indicate the gender and case, i.e. **dem/einem guten Mann, der/einer guten Frau, dem/einem guten Kind**.

The endings in this paradigm are applied after all the possessive adjectives (i.e. **mein, dein, sein/ihr/sein, unser, euer, Ihr, ihr** – see 7.2.1) as well as after

**kein.** Of course you cannot get a plural noun after **ein**, but you can after all the other determiners in this group and thus there is a fourth column above, i.e. **keine alten Leute**. A person's name with a gen. -s ending (see 4.4) standing before the adjective fulfils the same function as a possessive adjective and thus these endings are required, e.g. **Karls nagelneues Auto** (Karl's brand new car).

The black lines drawn between the accusative and the genitive endings in sets 1 and 2 are intended to emphasize that below these lines, including the plural, these two sets of endings are identical. This greatly reduces what you need to learn by heart. It is only in the nominative and accusative that you have to be careful if a determiner precedes a noun, because in the other two cases and in the plural there is only one possible ending, i.e. **-en**.

Remember this: a German noun with a determiner and an adjective in front of it can only grunt (rrr!) or hiss (sss!) once, i.e. **der gute Mann/ein guter Mann** and **das gute Kind/ein gutes Kind**. In other words **der guter Mann** and **das gutes Kind** are not possible – the system is more economical than this.

### 8.1.3 The unpreceded adjectival (strong) endings

	M	F	N	Pl
N	<b>-er</b>	<b>-e</b>	<b>-es</b>	<b>-e</b>
A	<b>-en</b>	<b>-e</b>	<b>-es</b>	<b>-e</b>
G	<b>-<u>en</u></b>	<b>-er</b>	<b>-<u>en</u></b>	<b>-er</b>
D	<b>-em</b>	<b>-er</b>	<b>-em</b>	<b>-en</b>

These endings closely resemble the endings of **der/die/das** themselves. But there is a reason for this. These are the endings that apply when nothing (i.e. no determiner) precedes the noun and thus you only have the adjective to indicate the gender, number and case, e.g. **teurer Wein, frische Milch, kaltes Bier, gute Leute**. The full diversity of endings is needed here to convey these necessary grammatical relationships. But note that the masculine and neuter genitive endings are **-en**, not **-es**, which you would expect if this paradigm were exactly parallel to that of **der/die/das** (gen. **des/der/des**). To emphasize this apparent discrepancy, the **-en** endings in the genitive, where **-es** might be expected, have had their **n** underlined in the paradigm above. The ending **-es** in the genitive has been dispensed with here as the noun shows the case, because all masculine and neuter nouns end in **-(e)s** in the genitive singular (see 4.1), e.g. **Anfang nächsten Monats** (at the beginning of next month), **Ende letzten Jahres** (at the end of last year). This is another example of the

economy of the system of adjectival inflection; two indicators of the genitive are considered superfluous in this instance.

#### 8.1.4 Adjectival endings after indefinite pronouns

**Alle** (all), **einige** (some), **mehrere** (several), **verschiedene** (various), **viele** (many) and **wenige** (few), in addition to being used as pronouns (see 7.7), can stand in front of plural nouns with an adjective between the two. The endings required after **alle** are the same as for the plural of **der/die/das** and those required after the others are the same as for unpreceded adjectives, i.e. the ending on the pronouns is identical to the ending on the adjective, e.g.

N	<b>alle guten Leute</b>	N	<b>viele gute Leute</b>
A	<b>alle guten Leute</b>	A	<b>viele gute Leute</b>
G	<b>aller guten Leute</b>	G	<b>vieler guter Leute</b>
D	<b>allen guten Leuten</b>	D	<b>vielen guten Leuten</b>

The reason for this distinction in endings between **alle** and the other pronouns is that **alle** refers to a definite number and the others to an indefinite number.

#### 8.1.5 Indeclinable adjectives

There is a handful of common adjectives borrowed from other languages that cannot take the endings given under 8.1.1 to 8.1.3, e.g. **beige**, **lila** (mauve), **orange**, **purpur** (purple). These adjectives can be used both attributively and predicatively but if used before a noun they often combine in writing with **-farben**, which can take the usual endings, e.g.

**Ihre Bluse ist lila. Ihre lila/lilafarbene Bluse.**

Her blouse is mauve. Her mauve blouse.

##### 8.1.5.1 Adjectives which are prefixed to the noun

There is a considerable number of compound nouns in German where the adjective is not inflected before the noun but actually joined to it as the compound is regarded as a concept. You can do nothing more than note them as you come across them, e.g. **Rotwein** not **roter Wein** (red wine), **Weißbrot** not **weißes Brot** (white bread). Likewise **die Fremdsprache** (foreign

language), **die Privatschule** (private school), **der Blauwal** (blue whale), **der Neubau** (new building), **der Nahverkehr** (local traffic), **das Sauerkraut**.

Sometimes the first part of such compound nouns is a noun in German but an adjective in English, e.g. **der Hauptbahnhof** (central/main station), **der Politikwissenschaftler** (political scientist), **mein Lieblingsbuch** (my favourite book).

## 8.2 Comparative of adjectives and adverbs

As German does not distinguish between adjectives and adverbs in predicative position (see 9.1), what is said here with regard to adjectives applies equally to adverbs.

The comparative form of the adjective, i.e. when stating that something is 'bigger' or 'smaller' etc. than something else, is formed in German as in English, i.e. by the addition of **-er** to the adjective, e.g.

**klein** > **kleiner**      small > smaller

**billig** > **billiger**      cheap > cheaper

When adding the **-er** ending, the vowel of the adjective is usually umlauted, if it can be, i.e. if it is an **a**, **o** or **u**, e.g.

**warm** > **wärmer**      warm > warmer

**groß** > **größer**      big > bigger

**klug** > **klüger**      clever > cleverer

Adjectives containing **au** never umlaut, e.g.

**grau** > **grauer**      grey > greyer

**schlau** > **schlauer**      smart > smarter

There is a substantial number of additional adjectives that do not umlaut despite containing an unlautable vowel, e.g.

**brav, bunt, dunkel, falsch, flach, froh, hohl, kahl, klar, knapp, lahm, morsch, nackt, platt, plump, rasch, roh, rund, sanft, satt, schlank, stolz, stumm, stumpf, toll, voll, wahr, zahm**

In the case of the following adjectives usage varies:

**bang, blass, glatt, dumm, fromm, gesund, krumm, nass, schmal, zart**

There are just a few adjectives/adverbs that have an irregular comparative, e.g.

<b>gern</b> > <b>lieber</b>	like > prefer
<b>gut</b> > <b>besser</b>	good > better
<b>hoch</b> > <b>höher</b>	high > higher
<b>nah</b> > <b>näher</b>	close/near > closer/nearer
<b>viel</b> > <b>mehr</b>	much > more

Note the following. When an English adjective/adverb contains more than two syllables, and sometimes even if it has only two syllables, we prefer to form its comparative by means of ‘more’ rather than adding -er; however long the word is in German, add -er to the end of it, e.g.

<b>interessant</b> > <b>interessanter</b>	interesting > more interesting
<b>oft</b> > <b>öfter</b>	often > more often/oftener

Adjectives that end in -e simply add -r, e.g.

<b>müde</b> > <b>müder</b>	tired > more tired
----------------------------	--------------------

Adjectives that end in unstressed -el and -er drop that e when adding the -er ending, e.g.

<b>dunkel</b> > <b>dunkler</b>	dark > darker
<b>teuer</b> > <b>teurer</b>	expensive > more expensive

### 8.2.1 *Common constructions that incorporate the comparative*

We’ll take **groß**, meaning ‘big’, ‘large’ or ‘tall’, to illustrate how the following phrases that compare two things work – you can substitute any adjective or adverb.

**Er ist (genau) so groß wie ich.**

He is (just) as tall as I/me.

**Er ist nicht so groß wie ich.**

He is not as tall as I/me.

**Er ist größer als ich.**

He is taller than I/me.

**Er wird immer größer.**

He's getting taller and taller.

In colloquial English we often use an object pronoun in expressions such as these (i.e. 'me'), whereas formal grammar demands a subject pronoun (i.e. 'I'). No such confusion exists in German where the **ich** is seen to be a contraction of ... **ich bin** and thus only a subject pronoun is possible.

When **je ... desto** (the ... the) is used in a full sentence, as in the second example below, note that the first clause has subordinate word order (i.e. the verb is placed at the end of that clause) and the second clause undergoes inversion of subject and verb, e.g.

**je größer desto besser**

the taller the better

**Je reicher er wird, desto geiziger wird er.**

The richer he gets, the more miserly he becomes.

**8.3 Superlative of adjectives and adverbs**

**8.3.1 The superlative of the adjective** (see also 8.3.2 )

The superlative of the adjective is formed by adding **-st**, as is usually the case in English too, and unlauding the preceding vowel where appropriate, e.g.

**billig** > **der/die/das billigste**                      cheap > the cheapest

**gesund** > **die/die/das gesündeste**                      healthy > the healthiest

**groß** > **der/die/das größte**                              big > the biggest

**klein** > **der/die/das kleinste**                              small > the smallest

Adjectives ending in **-d**, **-t** or any **s-sound** (i.e. **-s**, **-ss**, **-ß**, **-sch** or **-z**) insert an **e** before adding **-st**, e.g.

**hübsch** > **Elke ist das hübscheste Mädchen in der Klasse.**

pretty > Elke is the prettiest girl in the class.

The same applies to the adjective **neu** (new), i.e. **der neueste/am neuesten**.

Adjectives of more than two syllables in English employ 'most' instead of



the ending '-st', but this is not the case in German where -st can be added to an adjective whatever the number of syllables it contains, e.g.

**langweilig > der langweiligste Film**

boring > the most boring film

**interessant > das interessanteste Buch**

interesting > the most interesting book

### 8.3.2 *The superlative of the adverb*

The superlative of the adverb differs from that of the adjective explained above. It is formed as follows:

**langsam > am langsamsten** slowly > slowest

**schnell > am schnellsten** fast > fastest

There are several irregular adverbial superlatives, e.g.

**gern > am liebsten** like > like most of all (see **gern/lieber** above)

**gut > am besten** well > best

**hoch > am höchsten** high > highest

**nah > am nächsten** close/near > closest/nearest

**viel > am meisten** much > most of all

This is how they are used in practice:

**Er ist am schnellsten/langsamsten gelaufen.**

He ran (the) fastest/(the) slowest.

**Wer ist am höchsten gesprungen?**

Who jumped (the) highest?

It can sometimes be difficult to ascertain whether an English superlative is the superlative of the adjective or the adverb. The test is to ask yourself if 'the' before the superlative can be omitted and still sound correct, in which case you are dealing with the superlative of the adverb and thus an **am ...-sten** form is required; if it can't be omitted, you are dealing with the superlative of the adjective and a **der/die/das ...-ste** form is required, e.g.

**Wer hat am besten gesungen?/Wer war am besten?**

Who sang (the) best?/Who was (the) best?

**Wer war der beste (Sänger)?**

Who was the best (singer)?

Although this distinction can be a little tricky to determine in English, German offers you an easy way out. The **am ...-sten** form is very commonly used as the superlative of the adjective, as well as of the adverb, and thus it is seldom necessary to make any distinction if you stick to the **am ...-sten** form, e.g.

**Wer war der beste/schnellste/klügste? or**

**Wer war am besten/schnellsten/klügsten?**

Who was the best/fastest/cleverest?

In forms like **der beste/schnellste/klügste** the adjective is not capitalized, despite the fact that it would seem to be functioning as a noun; it is felt here that the noun is implied.

**8.4 Predicate adjectives followed by a prepositional object**

As in English, there is a large number of adjectives used predicatively that are followed by a fixed preposition, but whose preposition is often different from that used in English and thus these have to be learnt one by one. Here is a list of the most common. The adjective can either precede or follow a noun, although preceding it is more usual, whereas it nearly always follows a pronoun, e.g.

**Der Iran ist sehr reich an Öl.**

Iran is very rich in oil.

**Er ist in sie verliebt.**

He is in love with her.

In the following list the required grammatical case is given with all two-way prepositions but it should be noted that **auf** and **über** following such adjectives always govern the accusative, never the dative (see 12.3).

**abhängig von** dependent on

**allergisch gegen** allergic to

**anders als** (an adverb) different from

<b>arm an</b> (+ dat.)	poor in (e.g. minerals)
<b>aufgeregt über</b> (+ acc.)	excited about
<b>aufmerksam auf</b> (+ acc.)	aware of
<b>bedeckt mit</b>	covered in/with
<b>begeistert von/über</b> (+ acc.)	enthusiastic about
<b>bekannt wegen</b>	(well-)known for
<b>bereit zu</b>	ready for
<b>berühmt um</b>	famous for
<b>besessen von</b>	obsessed with
<b>besorgt um</b>	worried/anxious about
<b>bewusst</b> (+ gen.)	aware of
<b>böse auf</b> (+ acc.)	angry with, mad at
<b>charakteristisch für</b>	characteristic of
<b>dankbar für</b>	grateful for
<b>durstig nach</b>	thirsty for
<b>eifersüchtig auf</b> (+ acc.)	jealous of
<b>empfindlich gegen</b>	sensitive to
<b>empört über</b> (+ acc.)	indignant about
<b>enttäuscht von</b>	disappointed in/with s.o.
<b>erstaunt über</b> (+ acc.)	amazed at
<b>fähig zu</b>	capable of
<b>freundlich zu</b>	friendly towards
<b>gespannt auf</b> (+ acc.)	curious about
<b>gewöhnt an</b> (+ acc.)	used to
<b>gierig nach</b>	greedy for
<b>glücklich über</b> (+ acc.)	happy about
<b>gut in</b> (+ dat.)	good at (e.g. languages)

<b>gut zu</b>	nice to
<b>hungrig nach</b>	hungry for
<b>interessiert an</b> (+ dat.)	interested in
<b>neidisch auf</b> (+ acc.)	envious of
<b>neugierig auf</b> (+ acc.)	curious about
<b>optimistisch über</b> (+ acc.)	optimistic about
<b>parallel mit</b>	parallel to
<b>pessimistisch über</b> (+ acc.)	pessimistic about
<b>reich an</b> (+ dat.)	rich in (e.g. minerals)
<b>schlecht in</b> (+ dat.)	bad at (e.g. languages)
<b>schuldig</b> (+ gen.)	guilty of
<b>schwach in</b> (+ dat.)	weak at (e.g. mathematics)
<b>sicher vor</b> (+ acc.)	safe from
<b>stolz auf</b> (+ acc.)	proud of
<b>traurig über</b> (+ acc.)	sad about
<b>typisch für</b>	typical of
<b>überzeugt von</b>	convinced of
<b>umgeben von</b>	surrounded by
<b>unabhängig von</b>	independent of
<b>verantwortlich für</b>	responsible for
<b>verglichen mit</b>	compared to/with
<b>verheiratet mit</b>	married to
<b>verliebt in</b> (+ acc.)	in love with
<b>verwandt mit</b>	related to
<b>voll (mit)</b>	full of
<b>wütend auf</b> (+ acc.)	furious with
<b>zufrieden mit</b>	pleased/satisfied with

Predicate  
adjectives  
followed by a  
prepositional  
object

# Adverbs

Adverbs are those words which give information about the when, where, why and how of the action (i.e. the verb) of the sentence, but they can also qualify adjectives (e.g. ‘very good’) as well as other adverbs (e.g. ‘quite slowly’). They can be individual words or complete phrases. The approach adopted here is to look at the simplest adverbs, i.e. those derived from adjectives, and then to list the most common adverbs of time and place (see Time-Manner-Place rule under 9.4.1) as well as interrogative adverbs. Otherwise mastering adverbs is really chiefly a matter of extending your vocabulary.

## 9.1 Adverbs that are also adjectives

The adverb and adjective are identical in German, i.e. German does not have any equivalent of the English ‘-ly’, e.g.

**Er ist sehr langsam. Er fährt sehr langsam.**

He is very slow. He drives very slowly.

Adverbs, unlike adjectives, do not inflect, which is why in the following sentences **furchtbar**, **schrecklich**, **scheußlich**, **typisch** and **wahnsinnig** have no ending but **nett**, **teuer**, **bitter** and **deutsch** do:

<b>eine furchtbar nette Frau</b>	an awfully nice woman
<b>ein schrecklich teures Auto</b>	a terribly expensive car
<b>ein scheußlich bitterer Geschmack</b>	a horribly bitter taste
<b>ein typisch deutsches Gericht</b>	a typically German dish
<b>ein wahnsinnig interessantes Buch</b>	an awfully interesting book

Compare the following, where both are adjectives qualifying **Geschmack** and thus both take an ending:

**ein scheußlicher, bitterer Geschmack** a horrible, bitter taste

## 9.2 Comparative and superlative of adverbs

As German makes no distinction between adjectives and adverbs, generally speaking adverbs form their comparative and superlative in the same way as adjectives and this is dealt with under adjectives (see 8.2 and 8.3.2).

## 9.3 Intensifying adverbs

There is a variety of intensifying adverbs, as indeed there is in English too, which are used to qualify other adverbs and adjectives. The following adverbs are very commonly used to intensify adjectives and other adverbs:

<b>außergewöhnlich</b>	exceptionally
<b>äußerst</b>	extremely
<b>besonders</b>	especially, particularly
<b>enorm</b>	enormously
<b>furchtbar</b>	frightfully, awfully
<b>höchst</b>	highly
<b>scheußlich</b>	horribly
<b>schrecklich</b>	terribly, awfully
<b>sehr</b>	very
<b>wahnsinnig</b>	madly

### 9.3.1 How to render 'especially'

Take care with translating English 'especially'. When it is used as an adjectival or adverbial intensifier, **besonders** is the appropriate word, e.g.

**Es war besonders interessant.**

It was especially (particularly) interesting.

But when it stands alone not qualifying an adjective or adverb, i.e. in contexts where ‘especially’ can be substituted by ‘above all’, the expression **vor allem** is required, e.g.

**Vor allem wenn es regnet.**

Especially when it rains.

**vor allem im Sommer**

especially in (the) summer

## 9.4 Adverbs of time

Adverbial expressions of specific time such as ‘last week’, ‘next year’, ‘this weekend’, ‘every day’, of which there are many, are always expressed in the accusative case. This is only obvious, however, with masculine nouns. The determiners and adjectival endings in the nom. and acc. in such cases are identical for feminine and neuter nouns, e.g. **letzte Woche** (f.), **nächstes Jahr** (n.), **dieses Wochenende** (n.), **jeden Tag** (m.), **nächsten Mittwoch** (m.).

**Warte bitte einen Augenblick!**

Please wait a moment.

If the adverbial expression of time contains a preposition, the preposition determines the case, e.g. **am nächsten Tag** (the next day, dat.), **um Mitternacht** (at midnight, acc.).

A very limited number of adverbial expressions of indefinite or habitual time take the genitive case, e.g. **eines Tages** (one day), **eines Montags** (one Monday) and even **eines Nachts** (one night), despite the fact that it is feminine. Even expressions such as **morgens** (in the morning[s]) and **montags** (on Mondays) are derived from genitives too (see 9.4.7).

### 9.4.1 The Time-Manner-Place rule (TMP)

It is good style in German to begin clauses with adverbs of time. It is particularly advisable to do this when there are also adverbs of manner and place in the same clause. German insists on the order **Time, Manner, Place** whereas English usually has the reverse order, e.g.

P M T

He goes to school by bus every day.

T M P

**Er fährt jeden Tag mit dem Bus zur Schule.**

By beginning clauses with time in German, you then need only concentrate on putting manner and place in the correct order, e.g.

**Jeden Tag fährt er mit dem Bus zur Schule.**

Notice that if you begin the clause with time, inversion of subject and verb takes place.

Only statements can of course begin with time, never questions, where the verb must be in first position, e.g.

**Kommst du morgen mit dem Zug oder mit der Straßenbahn?**

Are you coming by train or tram tomorrow?

**9.4.2 Two expressions of time in one clause**

When there are two expressions of time in a clause, the general always precedes the particular:

**Ich stehe jeden Morgen um sechs Uhr auf.****Jeden Morgen stehe ich um sechs Uhr auf.**

I get up at six o'clock every morning.

**Er liest immer bis Mitternacht.**

He always reads till midnight.

**9.4.3 Adverbs of time cannot precede the finite verb**

Note that in the previous English sentence the adverb of time occurs between the subject and the finite verb. This is very common in English but is impossible in German because of the necessity for the verb always to stand in second position, e.g.

**Er ruft seine Mutter selten/oft an.**

He seldom/often rings his mother.

**Er hat mir das Geld nie zurückbezahlt.**

He never paid me back the money.



#### 9.4.4 *Word order of adverbs of time and object*

When an expression of time occurs in a sentence with a nominal direct object, it precedes the object, not however when the object is pronominal, e.g.

**Ihr müsst heute Abend dieses Kapitel lesen.**

You must read this chapter tonight. (nominal object)

**Ihr müsst es heute Abend lesen.**

You must read it tonight. (pronominal object)

**Ich habe ihm gestern das Geld gegeben.**

I gave him the money yesterday. (both a pronominal and nominal object)

This problem can be avoided by beginning with time:

**Heute Abend müsst ihr dieses Kapitel lesen.**

**Gestern habe ich ihm das Geld gegeben.**

#### 9.4.5 *Word order with adverbs of time in coordinate clauses*

The coordinating conjunctions *aber*, *denn*, *oder*, *sondern* and *und* do not affect the word order (see 11.1). Thus in the following example *morgen* is taken as the first idea in the new clause and consequently inversion of subject and verb takes place:

**Gestern ist er nach Moskau geflogen, aber morgen kommt er zurück.**

Yesterday he flew to Moscow but he is coming back tomorrow.

A stylistic variant of the above, not placing time at the beginning of each clause, is:

**Er ist gestern nach Moskau geflogen, aber (er) kommt morgen zurück.**

(If *er* is not repeated, no comma should be inserted before *aber*.)

#### 9.4.6 *How to translate 'for' in expressions of time*

Whether 'for' in expressions of time is translated, and if so how, depends on the tense of the statement. With reference to the future *auf* + acc. and *für* are interchangeable, e.g.

**(Auf/für) wie lange gehst du? Ich gehe auf/für zwei Wochen dahin.**

How long are you going for? I'm going there for two weeks.

With reference to past time 'for' is not translated, e.g.

**Ich bin zwei Wochen da gewesen.**

I was there for two weeks.

**Er hat zehn Jahre in Schottland gewohnt.**

He lived in Scotland for ten years.

But when an action began in the past and has continued into the present, in which case English uses the perfect tense and German uses the present tense, German uses either **schon** or **seit** to render 'for' (see 10.1.5.3), e.g.

**Er wohnt schon zehn Jahre in Schottland.**

**Er wohnt seit zehn Jahren in Schottland.**

He has been living in Scotland for ten years.

**Schon**, being an adverb itself, is followed by an adverbial expression of time in the accusative case, but **seit**, being a preposition, puts the adverbial expression that follows it in the dative case. Both **schon** and **seit** are commonly used together to render 'for' in such expressions too, e.g.

**Er wohnt schon seit zehn Jahren in Schottland.**

#### 9.4.7 Common adverbial expressions of time

**Days of the week (die Wochentage)** (see 13.8)

on Sundays	<b>sonntags</b> or <b>an Sonntagen</b> etc.
on Mondays	<b>montags</b>
on Tuesdays	<b>dienstags</b>
on Wednesdays	<b>mittwochs</b>
on Thursdays	<b>donnerstags</b>
on Fridays	<b>freitags</b>
on Saturdays	<b>samstags, sonnabends</b>
on Sunday (past and coming)	<b>am Sonntag</b>

the Sunday after	<b>am folgenden Sonntag</b>
Sunday morning, afternoon, evening/night	<b>Sonntagmorgen, -nachmittag, -abend</b>
on Sunday evenings	<b>am Sonntagabend, an Sonntagabenden</b>
by Sunday	<b>bis Sonntag</b>
next Sunday	<b>nächsten Sonntag</b>
last Sunday	<b>letzten Sonntag</b>
from Sunday (on)	<b>ab Sonntag/von Sonntag an</b>
on Sundays and holidays	<b>an Sonn- und Feiertagen</b>

### **Yesterday, today, tomorrow etc.**

According to the pre-1998 spelling (see 2.5) compound expressions such as **gestern Morgen** were written **gestern morgen**. This has now changed to reflect the fact that **Morgen** is a noun and should thus be capitalized, whereas **gestern** is an adverb and is not capitalized.

yesterday	<b>gestern</b>
yesterday morning	<b>gestern Morgen</b>
yesterday afternoon	<b>gestern Nachmittag</b>
yesterday evening or (more usually) last night	<b>gestern Abend</b>
the day before yesterday	<b>vorgestern</b>
the morning of the day before yesterday*	<b>vorgestern Morgen</b>
the evening of the day before yesterday*	<b>vorgestern Abend</b>

(\*In such cases in English we would be more likely to say 'Wednesday morning/night' if today were Friday, for example.)

today	<b>heute</b>
from today on	<b>ab heute</b>

this morning/afternoon	<b>heute Morgen/Nachmittag</b>
tonight, this evening	<b>heute Abend</b>
tonight (after midnight)	<b>heute Nacht</b>
last night (after midnight)	<b>heute Nacht</b>
in a week's time	<b>heute in 8 Tagen</b>
in a fortnight's time	<b>heute in 14 Tagen</b>
tomorrow	<b>morgen</b>
tomorrow morning	<b>morgen früh</b> (not <b>morgen Morgen</b> )
tomorrow afternoon	<b>morgen Nachmittag</b>
tomorrow evening/night	<b>morgen Abend</b>
the day after tomorrow	<b>übermorgen</b>

### **Periods of the day (die Tageszeiten)**

in the morning(s)	<b>morgens, am Morgen</b>
in the afternoon(s)	<b>nachmittags, am Nachmittag</b>
in the evening(s)	<b>abends, am Abend</b>
at night	<b>nachts, in der Nacht</b>
during the day	<b>tagsüber</b>
late in the evening	<b>spät abends, spät am Abend</b>
at nine in the evening	<b>abends um neun</b>
early in the morning	<b>früh morgens</b>
at lunchtime/midday	<b>zu Mittag</b>
at one o'clock in the morning/a.m.	<b>um ein Uhr nachts</b>
at five o'clock in the morning/a.m.	<b>um fünf Uhr morgens/vormittags</b>

### **Weekend (das Wochenende)**

this/next weekend	<b>dieses/nächstes Wochenende</b>
-------------------	-----------------------------------

last weekend  
at/on the weekend

**letztes Wochenende**  
**am Wochenende**

### Seasons (die Jahreszeiten)

the summer, winter, autumn, spring

**der Sommer, Winter, Herbst,  
Frühling**

in summer etc.

**im Sommer**

next summer etc.

**nächsten Sommer**

last summer etc.

**letzten Sommer**

this summer etc.

**diesen Sommer**

### Now

now

**jetzt**

from now on

**ab jetzt, von nun an**

until now, up to now

**bis jetzt**

nowadays

**heutzutage**

now and then

**ab und zu**

at the present time, currently

**zur Zeit**

### Hour

for hours

**stundenlang**

two hours ago

**vor zwei Stunden**

in two hours' time

**in zwei Stunden**

### Day

one day, morning, evening

**eines Tages, Morgens, Abends**

that day, morning, evening

**an dem Tag, Morgen, Abend**

the next day

**am nächsten Tag**

the day after

**am Tag danach**

the day before

**am Tag davor/am vorigen Tag**

all day, evening

**den ganzen Tag, Abend**

all night

**die ganze Nacht**

for days

**tagelang**

one of these days

**irgendwann, eines Tages**

(on) the same day

**am selben Tag**

once/twice a day

**einmal/zweimal am Tag**

daily, every day

**täglich, jeden Tag**

the day after (that)

**am Tag danach, am nächsten  
Tag**

the day before

**am vorigen Tag**

## **Week**

this week

**diese Woche**

next week

**nächste Woche**

last week

**letzte Woche**

in a week, in a week's time

**in einer Woche**

in a fortnight, in a fortnight's time

**in zwei Wochen, in vierzehn  
Tagen**

within a week

**innerhalb einer Woche**

a week ago

**vor einer Woche**

a fortnight ago

**vor vierzehn Tagen**

Friday week, a week from Friday

**Freitag in einer Woche**

during the week

**während der Woche**

on weekdays

**wochentags, an Wochentagen**

at the beginning of next week

**Anfang nächster Woche**

at the end of last week

**Ende letzter Woche**

all week (long)

**die ganze Woche hindurch**

from next week on

**ab nächster Woche**

once/twice a week

**einmal/zweimal in der Woche  
einmal/zweimal pro Woche**

**Month** (see 13.8)

this month  
 next month  
 last month  
 from next month (on)  
 in a month's time  
 within a month  
 a month ago  
 for months  
 once/twice a month  
 at the beginning of January  
 in the middle of January  
 at the end of January  
 in January

**diesen Monat**  
**nächsten Monat**  
**letzten Monat**  
**ab nächstem Monat**  
**in einem Monat**  
**innerhalb eines Monats**  
**vor einem Monat**  
**monatelang**  
**einmal/zweimal im Monat**  
**Anfang Januar**  
**Mitte Januar**  
**Ende Januar**  
**im Januar**

**Year**

this year  
 from this year (on)  
 next year  
 last year  
 in two years' time  
 two years ago  
 years ago  
 throughout the year  
 once a year  
 in the (nineteen) sixties

**dieses Jahr**  
**ab diesem Jahr**  
**nächstes Jahr**  
**letztes Jahr**  
**in zwei Jahren**  
**vor zwei Jahren**  
**vor Jahren, Jahre her**  
**das ganze Jahr hindurch**  
**einmal im Jahr**  
**in den sechziger Jahren**

## Holidays (Feiertage)

on public holidays

Ascension Day

All Hallows/All Saints' Day

(at) Christmas

Christmas Day

Boxing Day

New Year's Eve

(at) Easter

(at) Whitsun(tide)/Pentecost

October 3rd

**an Feiertagen**

**Himmelfahrt**

**Allerheiligen**

**(zu) Weihnachten**

**erster Weihnachtstag**

**zweiter Weihnachtstag**

**Sylvester**

**(zu) Ostern**

**(zu) Pfingsten**

**Tag der deutschen Einheit**

## Time

at the same time

some time ago, after some time

a little while

a moment

at the moment

all the time

for a long time

on time

at all times/any time

once, one time

twice, three times etc.

a few/several times

last time

next time

this time

**zur gleichen Zeit, gleichzeitig**

**vor/nach einiger Zeit**

**ein Weilchen**

**einen Augenblick**

**zur Zeit**

**die ganze Zeit**

**lange**

**rechtzeitig**

**zu jeder Zeit, jederzeit**

**einmal**

**zweimal, dreimal**

**ein paar Mal**

**das letzte Mal**

**das nächste Mal**

**diesmal**



twice a day  
 in the course of time  
 in the long run

**zweimal am Tag**  
**im Laufe der Zeit**  
**auf die Dauer**

### General expressions of time

always  
 still  
 not yet  
 still not  
 for good  
 seldom  
 ever  
 never  
 mostly  
 sometimes  
 now and again/then  
 meanwhile  
 often, more often  
 once in a while, from time to time  
 usually  
 recently  
 recently, the other day  
 lately  
 at the latest  
 at the earliest  
 late  
 these days

**immer**  
**noch, immer noch, noch stets**  
**noch nicht**  
**immer noch nicht**  
**für immer**  
**selten**  
**je, jemals**  
**nie, niemals, noch nie** (see 14.2.g)  
**meistens**  
**manchmal**  
**ab und zu**  
**inzwischen, mittlerweile**  
**oft, öfter**  
**öfters**  
**gewöhnlich**  
**vor kurzem, kürzlich**  
**neulich** (not as recent as **vor kurzem**)  
**in letzter Zeit**  
**spätestens**  
**frühestens**  
**zu spät**  
**heutzutage**

in (the) future	<b>in Zukunft, künftig</b>
henceforth, from now on	<b>von nun an</b>
from then on	<b>von da an</b>
high time	<b>höchste Zeit</b>
for the time being, provisionally	<b>vorläufig</b>
temporarily	<b>vorübergehend</b>
since, since then	<b>seitdem, seither (lit.)</b>
immediately	<b>sofort</b>
presently, in a moment	<b>gleich</b>
soon, quickly	<b>bald</b>
soon afterwards	<b>bald danach</b>
as soon as possible	<b>so bald wie möglich</b>

#### **9.4.8** *Adverbs of time with alternative translations in German*

##### **Afterwards**

afterwards, after that	<b>dann, danach, nachher</b>
------------------------	------------------------------

##### **Again**

again	<b>wieder</b>
(yet) again	<b>schon wieder</b>
again and again	<b>immer wieder</b>

##### **Before**

before, earlier, formerly, previously	<b>früher</b>
(as) (never) before	<b>(wie) (nie) zuvor</b>
before that	<b>davor, vorher</b>

**Finally**

finally

**zum Schluss, schließlich,  
letztens**

finally, at last

**endlich**

eventually

**schließlich****Firstly**

firstly

**zuerst**

first (as in 'Show me the letter first')

**zuerst**

for the first time

**zum ersten Mal**

firstly (secondly, thirdly etc.)

**erstens (zweitens, drittens etc.)**

at first

**anfangs, am Anfang****Then**

then

**dann**

then, at that time (in the past)

**damals****9.5 Adverbs of place and direction**

You will notice in several of the groups of adverbs below that there is a form with and without the preposition **nach**. In English there is usually only one word to express both place and motion towards a place but in the latter case these German adverbs of direction express motion towards a place by means of **nach**.

He lives here.

**Er wohnt hier.**

How often does he come here?

**Wie oft kommt er hierher?**  
(see 9.7.3)

He works there.

**Er arbeitet da/dort.**

How does he get there?

**Wie fährt er dahin/dorthin?**  
(see 9.7.3)

She's sitting outside.

**Sie sitzt draußen.**

She went outside.

**Sie ging nach draußen.** (see 9.7.3)

She sleeps upstairs/downstairs.

**Sie schläft oben/unten.**

She went upstairs/downstairs.

**Sie ging nach oben/unten.**  
(see 9.7.3)

(to) here

**hierher** (see 9.7.3)

(to) there

**dahin, dorthin** (see 9.7.3)

next-door

**nebenan**

on this/these

**hierauf** (see 7.1.4)

in this/these

**hierin**

Similarly:

on that/those

**darauf** (see 7.1.4)

in that/those

**darin**

on the left, (turn) left

**links**

on the right, (turn) right

**rechts**

to the left

**nach links**

to the right

**nach rechts**

in the middle

**in der Mitte**

straight ahead

**geradeaus**

in/at the front

**vorn(e)**

in/at the back

**hinten**

(go) to the front

**nach vorne**

(go) to the back

**nach hinten**

upstairs

**oben**

downstairs

**unten**

(to) upstairs

**nach oben** (see 9.7.3 for **hinauf**)

(to) downstairs

**nach unten**

inside

**drinnen**

outside	<b>draußen</b>
(to) inside	<b>nach drinnen</b>
(to) outside	<b>nach draußen</b> (see 9.7.3 for <b>hinaus</b> )
home	<b>nach Hause/heim</b>
at home	<b>zu Hause/daheim</b>
away	<b>weg</b>
far away	<b>weit weg</b>
underway, on the way	<b>unterwegs</b>
uphill	<b>bergauf</b>
downhill	<b>bergab</b>
everywhere	<b>überall</b>
somewhere	<b>irgendwo</b>
nowhere	<b>nirgendwo, nirgends</b>

## 9.6 Adverbs of manner and degree

Adverbs of manner and degree are too numerous and diverse to list, e.g. **mit dem Zug** (by train), **glücklicherweise** (fortunately), **mit lauter Stimme** (in a loud voice), etc. You are advised to consult a good dictionary for such expressions.

## 9.7 Interrogative adverbs

Interrogative adverbs are those words that introduce questions asking when, where, how and why etc. (see also Interrogative pronouns under 7.5). For interrogative adverbs in indirect questions see 11.2.

why	<b>warum</b>
when	<b>wann</b>
how	<b>wie</b>
where	<b>wo</b>

where ... (to)

**wohin, wo ... hin** (see 9.7.2)

where ... from

**woher, wo ... her** (see 9.7.2)

Interrogative  
adverbs

### **9.7.1** Wie *occasionally renders English 'what'*

**Wie ist Ihr Name? or Wie heißen Sie?**

What is your name?

Otherwise *wie* means 'how' and, like 'how' in English, it is often followed by other adverbs, e.g.

(for) how long

**wie lange**

how much

**wie viel**

how many

**wie viele**

how often

**wie oft**

how far

**wie weit**

**Wie viel hast du für deinen neuen Porsche bezahlt?**

How much did you pay for your new Porsche?

Note the following idiomatic ways of asking the date (see 13.8):

**Der wievielte ist heute? or Den wievielten haben wir heute?**

What is the date today?

### **9.7.2** *Wo, wohin, woher*

Whenever *wo* occurs in a question with a verb of motion designating direction to or from a place, German must use the compounds **wohin** or **woher** respectively (compare the use of 'whither' and 'whence' in archaic English), but two word orders are possible, e.g.

**Wo wohnen Sie?**

Where do you live?

**Wohin gehen Sie? or Wo gehen Sie hin?**

Where are you going? (= whither)

**Woher kommen Sie? or Wo kommen Sie her?**

Where do you come from? (= whence)

### 9.7.3 *Hin and her*

**Hin** and **her** are adverbs that indicate direction away from and towards the speaker respectively. They are most commonly used together with prepositions to form separable prefixes of separable verbs to emphasize movement (see 10.9.1): **herab**, **herauf**, **heraus**, **hinein**, **hinüber**, **hinunter**, e.g.

**Bring die Stühle bitte herein!**

Please bring the chairs in.

**Er ging die Treppe hinauf.**

He went up the stairs.

In spoken German both **hin** and **her** used in combination with such prepositional prefixes (see 10.9.1.a) are pronounced simply as **r**, e.g.

**Geh rauf!** (< **Geh hinauf**), **Komm runter!** (< **Komm herunter**),  
**Raus!** (< **Hinaus**)

Go upstairs, Come down(stairs), Get out.

The prefixes do not always indicate literal but rather figurative movement, e.g.

**Was habt ihr herausgefunden?**

What did you find out?

**Hin** and **her** can act as separable verbal prefixes on their own (see 10.9.1.b), e.g.

**Wie hast du das hingekriegt?**

How did you manage that?

**Gib das her!**

Hand it over.

**Hin und her** is an adverbial expression in itself meaning ‘to and fro’ or ‘back and forth’.

**2.**

**GERMAN  
VOCABULARY**





# Inhalt

## Contents

---

		Seite
<b>Vorwort</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	8
<b>Benutzerhinweise / Zeichenerklärung</b>	<b>Notes for the user / Explanation of symbols</b>	10
<b>Lerntipps</b>	<b>Learning tips</b>	12
<b>1. Kontakte / Kommunikation</b>	<b>Contacts / Communication</b>	15
<b>1.1</b> Soziale Kontakte	Social contacts	16
<b>1.2</b> Informationsaustausch	Exchange of information	22
<b>1.3</b> Meinungen	Opinions	24
<b>1.4</b> Vorschläge / Bitten	Suggestions / Requests	26
<b>1.5</b> Reaktionen	Reactions	28
<b>2. Der Mensch</b>	<b>Human beings</b>	31
<b>2.1</b> Angaben zur Person	Personal data	32
<b>2.2</b> Körperteile und Organe	Parts of the body and organs	33
<b>2.3</b> Äußere Erscheinung	Outward appearance	36
<b>2.4</b> Kindheit und Jugend	Childhood and youth	39
<b>2.5</b> Erwachsenenalter	Adult life	41
<b>2.6</b> Persönlichkeit und Verhalten	Personality and behaviour	43
<b>2.7</b> Sinne und Sinneseindrücke	Senses and sensory impressions	47
<b>2.8</b> Gefühle und Einstellungen	Feelings and attitudes	51
<b>2.9</b> Ethik und Moral	Ethics and morality	55
<b>2.10</b> Persönliche Beziehungen	Human relations	58
<b>2.11</b> Sexualität	Sexuality	63
<b>2.12</b> Leben und Tod	Life and death	64
<b>3. Die Familie</b>	<b>The family</b>	67
<b>3.1</b> Verwandtschaft	Family relations	68
<b>3.2</b> Partnerschaft	Partnership	69
<b>3.3</b> Kinder	Children	73
<b>4. Dinge des Alltags</b>	<b>Everyday life</b>	77
<b>4.1</b> Essen	Eating	78
<b>4.2</b> Trinken	Drinking	85
<b>4.3</b> Rauchen	Smoking	88
<b>4.4</b> Körperpflege	Personal hygiene	89
<b>4.5</b> Kleidung	Clothing	91
<b>4.6</b> Einkaufen	Shopping	95

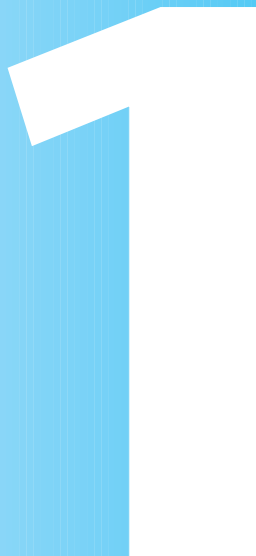
<b>5. Zuhause</b>	<b>At home</b>	99
5.1 Wohnen	How people live	100
5.2 Einrichtung	Furnishings	105
5.3 Hausarbeit	Housework	109
5.4 Kochen	Cooking	111
<b>6. Feste und Freizeit</b>	<b>Parties, festivals and free time</b>	115
6.1 Feiertage und Urlaub	Holidays	116
6.2 Private und öffentliche Feierlichkeiten	Private and public celebrations	117
6.3 Gesellschaftlicher Umgang	Socializing	121
6.4 Auswärts essen und trinken	Going out to eat and drink	124
6.5 Unterhaltendes	Entertainment	131
6.6 Reise und Reiseplanung	Travel and travel plans	132
6.7 Reiseunterkunft	Accommodation	136
6.8 Hobbys	Hobbies	139
6.9 Sport	Sport	141
<b>7. Krankheit und Gesundheit</b>	<b>Illness and health</b>	147
7.1 Krankheit und gesundheitliche Probleme	Illness and health problems	148
7.2 Verletzungen und Unfälle	Injuries and accidents	151
7.3 Behinderungen	Disabilities	153
7.4 Beim Arzt	At the doctor's	155
7.5 Beim Zahnarzt	At the dentist's	160
7.6 Im Krankenhaus	In hospital	162
7.7 Gesunde Lebensweise	Healthy living	165
<b>8. Staat und staatliche Institutionen</b>	<b>State and government institutions</b>	169
8.1 Staat	State	170
8.2 Demokratie	Democracy	172
8.3 Regierung	Government	174
8.4 Parteien und Wahlen	Parties and elections	177
8.5 Internationale Beziehungen	International relations	181
8.6 Wirtschaft	Economy	183
8.7 Steuern	Taxation	190
8.8 Sozialstaat	Welfare state	192
8.9 Recht und Gesetz	Law	193
8.10 Polizei	Police	199
8.11 Militär	Military	201

<b>9. Politische und soziale Fragen</b>	<b>Political and social issues</b>	207
9.1 Politische Probleme	Political problems	208
9.2 Arbeitsmarkt / Beschäftigung	Labour market / Employment	209
9.3 Multikulturelles Zusammenleben	Living together in a multicultural community	213
9.4 Mann und Frau	Man and woman	216
9.5 Soziale Sicherheit	Social security	216
9.6 Armut	Poverty	219
9.7 Alkohol und Drogen	Alcohol and drugs	220
9.6 Kriminalität	Crime	223
<b>10. Bildung</b>	<b>Education</b>	227
10.1 Bildungseinrichtungen	Educational establishments	228
10.2 Fächer und Fertigkeiten	Subjects and skills	231
10.3 Abschlüsse und Qualifikationen	Exams and qualifications	232
10.4 Lehren und Lernen	Teaching and learning	235
10.5 Im Unterricht	In class	238
<b>11. Kulturelles Leben</b>	<b>Cultural life</b>	241
11.1 Bildende Kunst	Fine arts	242
11.2 Architektur	Architecture	247
11.3 Fotografie	Photography	249
11.4 Musik und Tanz	Music and dance	251
11.5 Theater und Film	Theatre and cinema	256
11.6 Literatur	Literature	262
11.7 Philosophie	Philosophy	265
11.8 Religion	Religion	267
<b>12. Wissen und Wissenschaft</b>	<b>Knowledge and science</b>	273
12.1 Wissen	Knowledge	274
12.2 Forschung	Scientific research	277
12.3 Mathematik	Mathematics	280
12.4 Physik	Physics	284
12.5 Chemie und Biochemie	Chemistry and biochemistry	287
12.6 Biologie	Biology	289
12.7 Medizin	Medicine	293
12.8 Psychologie	Psychology	297
12.9 Soziologie	Sociology	299
12.10 Geschichte	History	301
12.11 Geologie	Geology	302
<b>13. Welt der Technik</b>	<b>The World of technology</b>	307
13.1 Technik	Technology	308
13.2 Produktion	Manufacturing	309
13.3 Elektrizität	Electricity	311
13.4 In der Werkstatt	In the workshop	313

<b>14. Verkehr</b>		<b>317</b>
<b>14.1</b> Straßenverkehr und Kraftfahrzeuge	<b>Transport</b> Road traffic and vehicles	<b>318</b>
<b>14.2</b> Mit der Bahn unterwegs	Rail travel	324
<b>14.3</b> Öffentliche Verkehrsmittel	Public transport	327
<b>14.4</b> Mit dem Flugzeug unterwegs	Air transport	329
<b>14.5</b> Mit dem Schiff unterwegs	Travel by ship	331
<b>15. Zeit, Raum, Menge</b>	<b>Time, space, quantity</b>	<b>335</b>
<b>15.1</b> Zeit	Time	336
<b>15.2</b> Raum	Space	341
<b>15.3</b> Menge	Quantity	343
<b>16. Stadt und Land</b>	<b>Town and country</b>	<b>347</b>
<b>16.1</b> In der Stadt	In the city	348
<b>16.2</b> Auf dem Land	In the country	349
<b>16.3</b> Landwirtschaft	Agriculture	351
<b>16.4</b> Tiere	Animals	353
<b>16.5</b> Pflanzen	Plants	358
<b>17. Erde und Weltraum</b>	<b>The earth and space</b>	<b>363</b>
<b>17.1</b> Kontinente, Meere, Seen, Flüsse	Continents, oceans, lakes, rivers	364
<b>17.2</b> Wetter und Klima	Weather and climate	365
<b>17.3</b> Naturkatastrophen	Natural disasters	368
<b>17.4</b> Umweltschutz	Conservation and environmental protection	369
<b>17.5</b> Astronomie und Raumfahrt	Astronomy and space travel	371
<b>18. Information und Kommunikation</b>	<b>Information and communication</b>	<b>375</b>
<b>18.1</b> Informationsquellen	Sources of information	376
<b>18.2</b> Buchhandel und Verlagswesen	Booktrade and publishing	379
<b>18.3</b> Presse	Press	383
<b>18.4</b> Rundfunk und Fernsehen	Radio and television	388
<b>18.5</b> Telefon und Fax	Telephone and fax	390
<b>18.6</b> Computer, Internet und E-Mail	Computer, internet and e-mail	395
<b>18.7</b> Briefe und Post	Letters and mail	399
<b>18.8</b> Korrespondenz	Correspondence	402

<b>19. Wirtschaft und Geschäftsleben</b>	<b>Economy and business life</b>	407
<b>19.1</b> Unternehmen und ihre Organisation	Companies and their organization	408
<b>19.2</b> Marketing	Marketing	411
<b>19.3</b> Vertrieb	Sales	414
<b>19.4</b> Finanzen und Bankverkehr	Finance and banking	416
<b>19.5</b> Berufe	Jobs	420
<b>20. Im Büro</b>	<b>In the office</b>	425
<b>20.1</b> Am Arbeitsplatz	At work	426
<b>20.2</b> Kommunikation am Arbeitsplatz	Communication at work	433
<b>Österreich</b>	<b>Austria</b>	439
<b>Österreichische Standardvarianten</b>	<b>Austrian standard variants</b>	445
<b>Schweiz</b>	<b>Switzerland</b>	451
<b>Schweizerische Standardvarianten</b>	<b>Swiss Standard variants</b>	458
<b>Englisches Register</b>	<b>English index</b>	463
<b>Deutsches Register</b>	<b>German index</b>	499

- 1.1 Soziale Kontakte**  
**Social contacts**
- 1.2 Informationsaustausch**  
**Exchange of information**
- 1.3 Meinungen**  
**Opinions**
- 1.4 Vorschläge / Bitten**  
**Suggestions / Requests**
- 1.5 Reaktionen**  
**Reactions**



**Kontakte / Kommunikation**  
**Contacts / Communication**

# Soziale Kontakte

## Social contacts

e **Begrüßung**, -en

\***begrüßen**

\***grüßen** / Hallo sagen

Grüßen Sie Herrn Schneider von mir. –

Ich werde es ausrichten.

r \***Gruß**, =e

Liebe Grüße an Gerd. – Mach ich.

Ich soll Sie von Herrn Straub grüßen. /

Schöne Grüße von Klaus.

greeting, welcome

greet, to welcome

greet / say hello

Give Mr Schneider my regards. –

I'll tell him.

greeting

Love to Gerd. – Will do.

Mr Straub asked me to say hello. /

Regards from Klaus.



### Hello!

Guten \*Tag. / Hallo! \*Herr / \*Frau Heuer.

Guten Tag zusammen. (ugs.)

Guten \*Morgen.

Guten \*Aabend.

Gute \*Nacht.

Morgen. (ugs.)

Grüezi. ['gry:ɛtsi] / Salü.

['zaly auch za'ly:] (schweiz.)

Servus. (südd., österr.)

Grüß Gott. / Grüß dich / euch. (südd., österr.)

Hi. ['hɔj] (ugs.)

Lange nicht gesehen. (ugs.)

Freut mich. / Angenehm.

\*Willkommen (zu Hause).

\*Herzlich Willkommen.

Schön, dass Sie da sind. / dass Sie  
kommen konnten.

Ah, da bist du ja (endlich).

Im Namen der Firma heiße ich Sie  
herzlich willkommen.

Wir freuen uns, Sie heute hier  
begrüßen zu dürfen.

Hello, Mr / Ms / Mrs Heuer.

Hello everybody.

Good morning.

Good evening.

Good night.

Morning.

Hello.

Hello.

Hello.

Hi.

Long time no see.

Nice to see you. / Pleased to meet  
you.

Welcome (home).

A warm welcome to you.

Nice of you to come.

Ah, there you are (at last).

On behalf of the company I would  
like to extend to you a very warm  
welcome.

We are pleased to be able to  
welcome you here today.

e **Anrede**, -n

jñ korrekt ↔ falsch **anreden** /

**ansprechen** (spricht an, sprach an,  
hat angesprochen)

jñ mit falschem Namen anreden

Wie soll ich ihn anreden?

r \***Titel**, -

form of address

address sb correctly ↔ incorrectly

address sb by the wrong name

How should I address him?

title

r **Adelstitel**

Darf ich vorstellen: Ferdinand Herzog von Bayern.

title [of nobility]

May I introduce Duke Ferdinand of Bavaria.

r **akademische Titel** / r **Dokortitel**

Ihr wurde der akademische Titel eines Doktor phil. verliehen.

academic title / doctorate

She was awarded a doctorate in philosophy.

e Ehrendoktorwürde / Dr. h.c.  
(= honoris causa)

honorary doctorate

Er hat die Ehrendoktorwürde der Universität Heidelberg erhalten.

He has been granted an honorary doctorate of the University of Heidelberg.

Nowadays you should address people as *Herr / Frau Berger*. The outdated form *Fräulein* (for unmarried women) is hardly used any more.

At public appearances use: *Liebe Bürgerinnen und \*Bürger!* – People / Citizens / Residents of ... [place]! · *Liebe Kolleginnen, liebe Kollegen!* – My dear colleagues! · *Meine Damen, meine Herren!* – Ladies and gentlemen!

The following written forms are possible: *Politikerinnen und \*Politiker / Politiker(in) / PolitikerInnen* – politicians / politician / politicians · *Personen aus der \*Politik* – people in politics

Academic titles can, but don't have to be used before the name when addressing someone: *Herr / Frau \*Professor*. Doctors of medicine are often addressed as *Herr / Frau \*Doktor*, e.g. *Herr / Frau Dr. Peters*.

In Austria academic titles are used much more often than in Germany. The most frequently used are, e.g., *Ing.* (Ingenieur – someone who has passed a technical Abitur), *Mag.* (Magister / Magistra), *DI* (Diplomingenieur) and *Dr.* (Doktor). Another feature special to Austria is that the teachers at a grammar school (*Gymnasium*) are addressed as *Frau / Herr Professor (Huber)*.

Public figures in offices of state are addressed or referred to, for example, as *Herr \*Bundespräsident // Frau \*Bundespräsidentin* (Mr / Ms Federal President) or *Herr \*Bundeskanzler // Frau \*Bundeskanzlerin* (Mr / Ms Federal Chancellor) or *Herr Botschafter // Frau Botschafterin* (Mr / Ms Ambassador) or *Herr \*Ministerpräsident // Frau \*Ministerpräsidentin* (Mr / Ms Prime Minister).

In Christian contexts priests may be addressed as, for example: *Herr Pfarrer / Hochwürden / Herr Pastor*. In prayers God is addressed as *du*.



**duzen** / jn mit Du anreden ↔

to address sb as “du” ↔ “Sie”

**siezen** / jn mit Sie anreden

Er hat mir das Du angeboten.

He said I could call him “du”.

Wollen wir uns nicht duzen?

Why don't we say “du”?

In dieser Firma duzen sich alle / sind wir alle per du.

In this company everybody calls each other “du”.

Er duzt sich mit seiner Chefin.

He's on “du” terms with his boss.





### Du or Sie?

The *Sie*-form creates distance. *Du* or *ihr* is used when people are familiar with each other, e.g. within the family, with close friends and with children and teenagers (up to 16). Also in certain social groups if it has been so agreed or is customary in a given social context, e.g. among students, children, teenagers and young people, and colleagues at work. Switching from *Sie* to *Du*: Only if both agree. Normally it's the older person who suggests it to the younger, never vice versa.

r <b>*Kontakt</b> , -e	contact
den Kontakt zu jm <b>*aufnehmen</b> (nimmt auf, nahm auf, hat aufgenommen) ↔ <b>unterbrechen</b> (unterbricht, unterbrach, hat unterbrochen)	make/establish ↔ break off (the) contact with sb
den Kontakt <b>aufrecht *erhalten</b> (erhält, erhielt, hat erhalten)	maintain contact
Wir bleiben in Kontakt / Verbindung. Ja? (sich) <b>*vorstellen</b>	We'll stay in contact/touch. OK? introduce (oneself)
Darf ich mich vorstellen?	May I introduce myself?
Darf ich Ihnen meinen Mann vorstellen?	May I introduce you to my husband?



### First contact

<i>Wie geht's? / Wie geht es Ihnen?</i>	How are you?
<i>Danke, sehr gut / super (ugs.) / gut / ganz gut. Und Ihnen?</i>	Very well, / Great, / Fine, / Fine, thanks. And you?
<i>Naja, es geht.</i>	Well, so so.
<i>Ach, nicht so gut.</i>	Oh, not so good.
<i>Ach, das tut mir aber Leid.</i>	Oh, I'm sorry to hear that.
<i>Entschuldigen Sie bitte. / Hallo. Ich hätte eine Frage. – Ja (bitte)?</i>	Excuse me. / Hello. I have a question. – Yes?
<i>*Entschuldigung. Könnten Sie mir *helfen?</i>	Excuse me. Could you help me?
<i>Ja. / Gern. / Na klar. / Sicher. / Natürlich. / Aber ja.</i>	Yes. / With pleasure. / Sure. / Certainly. / Of course. / Yes, surely.
<i>Um was geht es denn? / Was soll's denn sein?</i>	What can I do for you?
<i>Nein, tut mir Leid. / Entschuldigung, ich hab's eilig. / Leider nicht. / Das geht gerade nicht.</i>	No, sorry. / I'm sorry, I'm in a hurry. / I'm afraid not. / I can't just now.
<i>Einen *Moment bitte. / Gleich. / Sofort. / Können Sie kurz warten?</i>	Just a moment, please. / In a moment. / In a minute. / Could you wait a moment?
<i>Kann ich etwas für Sie tun?</i>	Can I do anything for you?
<i>Kann ich Ihnen behilflich sein?</i>	Can I help you?
<i>Ja *gern. / Das wäre *nett / *lieb.</i>	Yes, please. / That would be nice.
<i>Nein *danke, es geht schon / ich schaffe das schon.</i>	No, thanks, it's OK / I can manage.

Können Sie nicht **\*aufpassen?** / Hey. (ugs.)  
Entschuldigung, das wollte ich nicht. /  
Das tut mir schrecklich Leid.

Keine Ursache. / Das macht (doch) nichts. /  
Das kann doch jedem mal passieren. /  
Das kann vorkommen.

Danke. / Vielen Dank. / Herzlichen  
Dank. / Besten Dank. / Sehr nett  
von Ihnen.

Bitte. / Gern geschehen. /  
Nichts zu danken. / Schon gut. /  
Kein Problem.

Watch out. / Hey.  
I'm sorry, I didn't mean to do that. /  
I'm terribly sorry.

Don't mention it. / Never mind. /  
That can happen to the best of us.

Thank you. / Thanks very much. /  
Thank you very much. / Thanks a  
lot. / That's very nice of you.  
You're welcome. / With pleasure. /  
That's OK. / That's all right. /  
No problem.

s **\*Missverständnis**, -se  
**\*missverstehen** (misverstanden,  
hat misverstanden)  
richtig ↔ falsch **\*verstehen** (verstanden,  
hat verstanden)  
**verständlich** ↔ **unverständlich**

misunderstanding  
misunderstand  
understand correctly ↔  
misunderstand  
comprehensible ↔  
incomprehensible

### Checking questions

Entschuldigung. / **\*Verzeihung.**  
Ich habe nichts / nur einen  
Teil verstanden.

Wie bitte?

Ich kann Sie nicht verstehen.

Bitte **\*wiederholen** Sie das.

Noch einmal bitte.

Bitte **\*sprechen** Sie langsamer.

Was haben Sie gesagt?

Sagten Sie am 13. oder am 30.?

Das habe ich nicht (**\*richtig**) / **\*falsch**  
verstanden.

Haben Sie alles verstanden?

Können Sie mir folgen?

Ist das **\*klar**?

Ist noch etwas unklar? / Ist noch eine Frage  
offen geblieben?

Entschuldigung, habe ich Sie richtig  
verstanden?

Meinen Sie **\*vielleicht**: ...?

Excuse me. / Sorry.

I didn't understand anything. /  
I only partially understood.

Sorry?

I don't understand you.

(Could you) Please say that again.

Once more, please.

Could you speak more slowly,  
please.

What did you say?

Did you say on 13<sup>th</sup> or on 30<sup>th</sup>?

I didn't understand that (correctly). /  
I misunderstood that.

Did you understand everything?

Are you with me?

Is that clear?

Is anything unclear? / Is there any  
question still unanswered?

Sorry, have I understood you  
correctly?

Do you perhaps mean ...?



Also, das heißt / d.h., ...

Können Sie mir das nochmal genau  
\*erklären?

Können Sie das \*aufschreiben?

So that means / i.e. ...

Can you explain all that to me  
again?

Can you write that down?

**\*sich verabschieden** (von)  
sich verabschieden mit einem Kuss /  
einem Händedruck / einer Umarmung  
Lass dich **\*umarmen**.

r **Abschied**, -e

Der Abschied von der Familie fällt mir  
schwer.

ein tränenreicher / kurzer Abschied  
jm zum Abschied **die \*Hand schütteln**  
jm zum Abschied **\*winken** (gewunken)

say goodbye [to sb]  
kiss sb goodbye / give sb a farewell  
handshake / a goodbye hug

Let me give you a hug.  
farewell

I find it difficult to say goodbye to  
the family.

a tearful / short goodbye  
shake sb's hand in farewell  
to wave goodbye to sb

## Goodbye!

\*Auf Wiedersehen. / Wiedersehen.

Tschüs. / Tschau. / Ciao. [tʃau]

Ade. (südd.) [a'de:]

Servus. (südd./österr.)

Adieu. (schweiz.) [a'djø:]

Bis \*bald / \*später / \*gleich / \*nachher.

Einen schönen Tag / Abend noch.

(Ein) Schönes Wochenende.

Bis \*morgen / nächste Woche.

Mach's gut. / Machen Sie's gut. (ugs.)

Viel \*Spaß. / Viel \*Erfolg. /

Viel \*Glück. / Alles Gute.

Toi, toi, toi.

Gute \*Reise.

Grüße an Ihre Frau. / Grüßen Sie  
bitte Ihre Frau.

Ich hoffe, wir sehen uns bald wieder.

Wir \*freuen uns darauf, Sie bald  
wiederzusehen.

Wir hören dann wieder voneinander.

Ich darf mich dann verabschieden.

Hat mich sehr gefreut. /

Vielen Dank für Ihren \*Besuch.

Oh, (ist es) schon so spät?

Tut mir Leid, aber ich muss

jetzt weiter. / Ich muss jetzt leider gehen.

Jetzt muss ich aber los.

Goodbye. / Bye.

Cheerio. / Cheers.

Bye.

Bye.

Bye.

See you soon / later / in a little  
while / later on.

Enjoy the rest of your day / the  
evening.

Have a nice weekend.

See you tomorrow / next week.

Take care.

Have a good time. / Good luck. /  
Good luck. / All the best.

Good luck.

Have a good journey.

Regards / Please give my  
regards to your wife.

I hope we'll meet again soon.

We look forward to seeing you  
again soon.

We'll keep in touch.

I'll say goodbye if I may.

Been very nice to meet/see you. /  
Thank you very much for  
coming.

Oh, (is it) that late already?

Sorry, but I have to get on. / I'm  
afraid I have to go now.

I really must be off.

seine **Personalien** angeben /  
weitergeben

r \***Name**, -n

Wie heißen Sie? / Wie ist Ihr Name?

Wie war Ihr Name gleich wieder?

r \***Vorname** / r \***Nachname**

e (alte / derzeitige / neue) \***Adresse**, -n

e **Heimatadresse**

e Privatadresse *schweiz.*

Wie ist Ihre Adresse? / Welche Adresse  
haben Sie?

e **Telefonnummer**, -n /

e **Handynummer**, -n ['hendi...] /

e **Faxnummer**, -n

Geben Sie mir bitte Ihre Telefonnummer.

Hast du vielleicht Peters Telefonnummer?

Meine Handynummer hat sich geändert.

Die neue Nummer lautet: 123...

e \***E-Mail-Adresse**, -n ['i:me:ladresə]

r **Geburtsort**, -e

Wo sind Sie geboren?

s **Geburtsdatum**, -daten /

r \***Geburtstag**, -e

Wann ist Ihr Geburtstag? /

Wann sind Sie geboren

\***buchstabieren**

Wie buchstabieren Sie das?

give / pass on one's particulars

name

What's your name?

Sorry, what was your name again?

first name / surname

(old / present / new) address

home address

home address

What is your address?

telephone number /

mobile number /

fax number

Give me your phone number,  
please.

Do you by any chance have  
Peter's telephone number?

I have a new mobile number. The  
new number is: 123...

e-mail address

place of birth

Where were you born?

date of birth

When is your birthday? /

When were you born?

spell

How do you spell that?

### Wie buchstabieren Sie das?

A wie Anton

B wie Berta

C wie Cäsar

D wie Dora

E wie Emil

F wie Friedrich

G wie Gustav

H wie Heinrich

I wie Ida

J wie Julius

K wie Kaufmann

L wie Ludwig

M wie Marta

N wie Nordpol

O wie Otto

P wie Paula

### How do you spell that?

A for Alpha

B for Bravo

C for Charlie

D for Delta

E for Echo

F for Foxtrot

G for Golf

H for Hotel

I for India

J for Juliett

K for Kilo

L for Lima

M for Mike

N for November

O for Oscar

P for Papa



Q wie Quelle

R wie Richard

S wie Siegfried

T wie Theodor

U wie Ulrich

V wie Viktor

W wie Wilhelm

X wie Xanthippe

Y wie Ypsilon

Z wie Zeppelin

Q for Quebec

R for Romeo

S for Sierra

T for Tango

U for Uniform

V for Victor

W for Whisky

X for X-ray

Y for Yankee

Z for Zulu

In Austria the letters J and Q are spelled in a different way: J [je] instead of [jot] and Q [kwe] instead of [ku].

## Informationsaustausch Exchange of information

e **\*Information**, -en

e vertrauliche Information

Informationen **\*geben** / **weitergeben**

(gibt weiter, gab weiter, hat weitergegeben)

In etwa zehn Minuten werden die Ergebnisse **\*bekannt gegeben**.

**\*fragen** (nach +D) ↔ **\*antworten** (auf +A) / **beantworten**

Informationen **austauschen**

Zu Ihrer Information: Die Kantine ist gleich hier um die Ecke.

**\*sich informieren** (über +A)**\*sich erkundigen** (bei +D) (nach +A)

Frag doch mal an der Information nach.

information

confidential information

give / pass on information

The results will be made known in about ten minutes.

ask (about) ↔ answer

exchange information

For your information: the canteen is just around the corner.

inform oneself about

enquire (from sb) (about sth)

Ask at the information desk.

*Können Sie mir weiterhelfen? Ich suche ... / Ich brauche ...*

*Wissen Sie vielleicht, ob der \*Zug \*pünktlich ankommt?*

*Können Sie mir \*sagen, wie \*spät es ist? Ich hätte gerne eine Information / eine \*Auskunft.*

*Ich hätte da eine \*Frage.*

Can you help me? I'm looking for ... / I need ...

Do you by any chance know whether the train will arrive on time?

Can you tell me what time it is? I'd like some information.

I have a question.

**\*erklären**e **Erklärung**, -en

explain

explanation

e **Wörterklärung**, -en /  
e **Definition**, -en  
**umschreiben** (umschrieb, hat  
umschrieben)

explanation of a word / definition  
to paraphrase

*Was ist denn das?*  
*Wie nennt man denn das?*  
*Wer kann mir das erklären?*  
*Was ist das deutsche \*Wort für „desk“?*

What's that?  
What do you call that?  
Who can explain that to me?  
What is the German word for desk?

*Was ist das Gegenteil von „schnell“?*  
*Was ist der Unterschied zwischen  
„zahlen“ und „bezahlen“?*  
*Wie sagt man auf Deutsch? / Wie heißt  
das auf Deutsch?*

What is the opposite of "schnell"?  
What is the difference between  
"zahlen" and "bezahlen"?  
What do people say / What's that in  
German?

*Entschuldigung, ich weiß das Wort auf  
Deutsch nicht.*  
*Helfen Sie mir bitte. Ich komme nicht  
auf das Wort.*

Sorry, I don't know the word  
in German.  
Help me, please. I can't think of the  
word.

*Ich brauche ein ... für den \*Computer.  
Ich weiß nicht, wie man das nennt.*

I need a ... for the computer.  
I don't know what it's called.

*Es ist ein langes Kabel. –  
Eine Verlängerungsschnur?*

It's a long cable. –  
An extension flex?

*Sie meinen \*vielleicht ein ...  
Wahrscheinlich / Vermutlich ...*

Perhaps you mean a ...  
Probably / Presumably ...

*Ich glaube, dass ...*

I think that ...

*Ich bin mir nicht \*sicher, aber ...*

I'm not sure, but ...

*Ich weiß es nicht genau.*

I'm not quite sure (about it).

*Ja.*

Yes.

*Na klar.*

Of course.

*Ach ja.*

Oh yes.

*Richtig.*

Right.

*Das ist es.*

That's it.

\***vergessen** (vergisst, vergaß, hat  
vergessen) ↔ \***sich erinnern** (an +A)  
ein/einen Blackout haben  
Mir fällt das Wort nicht mehr ein. / Das  
Wort ist mir gerade entfallen.

forget ↔ remember

Es liegt mir auf der Zunge.  
Warte – gleich komme ich drauf.

have a blackout  
I can't think of the word. / The  
word has escaped me.

\***erzählen** (von)

It's on the tip of my tongue.  
Wait – I'll have it in a moment.

\***berichten** (von)

tell sb (about)  
to report (about)

Morgen bekommen Sie einen  
ausführlichen \***Bericht**.

You'll get a full report tomorrow.

e **Zusammenfassung**, -en

summary





Was haben Sie uns zu berichten?  
 Wie liefen die Gespräche?  
 Und? Was haben Sie (Neues)  
 \*erfahren?  
 Erzähl doch mal.  
 Wie war's? / Wie lief's?  
 Was ist passiert?  
 Was war los?

Stimmt es, dass ...?  
 Ist es richtig, dass ...?  
 Stimmt es etwa nicht, dass ...? – Doch.  
 Unglaublich.  
 Nein wirklich?  
 Kaum zu glauben.  
 Das wundert mich nicht.  
 Ach?!

What have you got to report?  
 How did the discussions go?  
 And? What did you find out (that's  
 new)?  
 Come on, tell me/us.  
 How was it? / How did it go?  
 What happened?  
 What was the matter? /  
 What happened?  
 Is it right that ...?  
 Is it correct that ...?  
 Isn't it true that ...? – Yes, it is.  
 Incredible.  
 No, really?  
 Unbelievable.  
 That doesn't surprise me.  
 Really? / No?!

## Meinungen Opinions

e \***Meinung**, -en / e \***Ansicht**, -en

Das ist meine **persönliche** Meinung / die  
**offizielle** Meinung.

Wir sind **derselben** ↔

**verschiedener** Meinung.

eine bestimmte Ansicht / Meinung haben

**seine Meinung** \***ändern**

jn **nach seiner Meinung** \***fragen**

**Meinungen austauschen**

eine (kleine) Meinungsverschiedenheit  
 haben (über +A)

jm deutlich ↔ vorsichtig die Meinung  
 sagen

\***meinen**

Das verstehe ich nicht. Wie meinst du  
 das? / Meinst du das ehrlich?

**zustimmen** ↔ \***widersprechen**

(widerspricht, widersprach, hat  
 widersprochen) / \***ablehnen**

\***dafür** ↔ \***dagegen sein** (ist, war,  
 ist gewesen)

jm Kontra geben

das **Pro und Kontra** (abwägen)

r \***Vorteil**, -e ↔ r \***Nachteil**, -e

opinion

That's my personal / the official  
 opinion.

We are of the same opinion ↔  
 different opinions.

have a certain/definite opinion

change one's mind

ask sb their opinion

exchange opinions

have a (small) difference of  
 opinion (about)

give sb a piece of one's mind ↔  
 gently put sb right

think, be of the opinion

I don't understand. What do you  
 mean? / Do you really mean that?

agree ↔ disagree, contradict /  
 decline, reject, refuse

be for ↔ against

flatly contradict sb

(weigh up) the pros and cons

advantage ↔ disadvantage

**Argumente** dafür und dagegen

**\*sammeln**

jn **\*überreden** / **\*überzeugen**

collect arguments for and against

persuade / convince sb

Was *\*denken* Sie darüber?

Wie *\*finden* Sie die neue Mode?

Und was halten Sie davon?

Was ist Ihre Meinung (dazu)?

Ich denke / finde / glaube / meine, ...

Ich nehme an, dass ...

Ich bin *\*überzeugt* davon, dass ...

Wir *\*vermuten*, dass ...

Meiner Meinung nach ...

Soviel ich weiß, ...

Richtig. / Genau. / Das stimmt.

Einverstanden. / In Ordnung. / Also gut.

Sie haben *\*Recht*.

Da bin ich völlig Ihrer Meinung!

Wir sind wieder einmal einer Meinung.

Das sehe ich genauso.

Egal.

Das ist mir (ganz) *\*eggl*. /

Das macht mir nichts aus.

Von mir aus. / Meinetwegen.

Ganz wie Sie wollen.

Was soll's?

Stimmt das *\*wirklich*?

Ich bin mir da nicht so *\*sicher*.

Ich habe da meine *\*Zweifel*.

Ich muss Ihnen leider widersprechen.

Nein, ich glaube eher, dass ...

Da bin ich (völlig) anderer Meinung.

Ich sehe das ganz anders.

Tut mir Leid, Sie haben Unrecht.

Das ist so einfach nicht *\*richtig*.

Das stimmt (so) nicht.

Das ist Quatsch / Unsinn / kompletter

Blödsinn. (ugs.)

Das ist nicht fair (von Ihnen).

Das mag ja stimmen, aber ...

Mag schon sein, aber ...

Im Großen und Ganzen ja, aber ...

Da können Sie zwar *\*Recht* haben, aber ...

Schön und gut, aber ...

Es hängt davon ab, was / ob ...

What do you think about it?

What do you think of the new fashion?

And what do you think about it?

What's your opinion (on this)?

I think / feel ...

I assume that ...

I am convinced that ...

We presume that ...

In my opinion ...

As far as I know ...

Right. / Exactly. / That's right.

Agreed. / OK.

You're right.

I fully agree with you.

We're of one mind again.

I see it exactly the same way.

Doesn't matter.

I don't care (at all).

As far as I'm concerned.

As you wish.

Who cares?

Is that really true?

I'm not so sure.

I have my doubts.

I'm afraid I have to contradict you.

No, I rather think that ...

I disagree (entirely).

I see that quite differently.

Sorry, you're wrong.

That's just not right.

That's not right.

That's nonsense / absolute rubbish.

That's not fair.

That may be true, but ...

That may be, but ...

By and large yes, but ...

You may be right, but ...

That's as it may be, but ...

It depends what / whether ...





Es kommt darauf an, wann / ob ...  
 Darum geht's hier aber nicht. Eigentlich ...  
 Einerseits ja, andererseits: ...

It depends when / whether ...  
 That's not the point. Actually ...  
 On the one hand yes, but on the other hand ...

## Vorschläge / Bitten

### Suggestions / Requests

r **\*Vorschlag**, -e

Das ist ein guter ↔ schlechter Vorschlag!

ein **akzeptabler** / **annehmbarer** ↔

**in**akzeptabler Vorschlag

ein **konstruktiver** Vorschlag

einen Vorschlag **\*annehmen** (nimmt an, nahm an, hat angenommen) ↔

**\*ablehnen**

**\*vorschlagen** (schlägt vor, schlug vor, hat vorgeschlagen)

Ich schlage vor, wir machen jetzt eine kurze Pause. – Eine gute Idee!

suggestion

That's a good ↔ bad suggestion.

an acceptable ↔ unacceptable

suggestion

a constructive suggestion

accept / take up ↔ reject a suggestion

suggest

I suggest we take a short break. – Good idea.



### Suggestions

*Ich würde Folgendes vorschlagen: ...*

*Ich hätte einen Vorschlag zu machen.*

*Darf ich einen Vorschlag machen?*

*Mein Vorschlag ist: ...*

*Ich glaube, Sie sollten weniger rauchen.*

*Wie wäre es, wenn ...?*

*Was denkst du: Sollen wir das Auto kaufen?*

*Nehmen wir doch das \*Angebot an. Was halten Sie davon?*

*An Ihrer Stelle würde ich das Angebot annehmen.*

*Vielleicht können wir das \*Gespräch heute Abend beim Abendessen fortsetzen.*

*Also, dann um 20 Uhr im Hotel (, wenn es Ihnen recht ist).*

I would suggest the following: ...

I have a suggestion to make.

May I make a suggestion?

My suggestion is ...

I think you should smoke less.

How about ...?

What do you think: should we buy the car?

Let's accept the offer. What do you think?

If I were you I'd accept the offer.

Maybe we can continue the discussion over dinner this evening.

OK, at 8 in the hotel then (if that's alright with you).

e **\*Möglichkeit**, -en

Es gibt mehrere Möglichkeiten.

e **\*Bitte**, -n

eine **dringende** / **höfliche** Bitte

**jn um etw \*bitten** (bat, hat gebeten)

possibility / chance

There are several possibilities.

request

an urgent / a polite request

ask sb for sth

Dürfte ich Sie bitten, etwas leiser zu sprechen.

Hilfst du uns, bitte? – Dazu bin ich gern **\*bereit**.

r **\*Wunsch**, -e

einen Wunsch formulieren / ausdrücken / zum Ausdruck bringen

e **\*Absicht**, -en

Sie hat die Absicht, eine Weltreise zu machen.

Das hat er mit Absicht gemacht.

e **Aufforderung**, -en

jn **\*auffordern** etw zu tun

Alle wurden aufgefordert, den Raum zu verlassen.

Could I ask you to speak a little more quietly?

Can you help us, please? – I'm very willing to do it.

wish

formulate / express a wish

intention

She is planning to go on a world tour.

He did that on purpose.

request, demand

invite / ask sb to do sth

Everyone was asked to leave the room.

### Requests

*Würden Sie mich **\*bitte** durchlassen? / Kann ich bitte durch?*

*Könnten Sie mir bitte beim Tragen **\*helfen**?*

*Ich möchte eine Reservierung machen.*

*Es wäre schön, wenn du kommen könntest.*

*Kommen Sie doch bitte herein.*

*Melden Sie sich bitte bis heute 3 Uhr.*

*Fahren Sie endlich Ihr Auto weg!*

Would you let me through, please? / Can I come past, please?

Could you help me with the carrying, please?

I'd like to make a reservation.

It would be nice if you could come.

Do come in, please.

Report in please by 3 o'clock.

Get your car out of here!

**\*erlauben** ↔ **\*verbieten** (verbot, hat verboten)

Meine Eltern erlauben mir das nie.

Meine Eltern haben mir verboten, auf die Party zu gehen.

e **\*Erlaubnis**, -se ↔ s **\*Verbot**, -e

Er muss seine Eltern erst **um Erlaubnis bitten**.

allow, permit ↔ forbid

My parents never allow me to.

My parents have forbidden me to go to the party.

permission ↔ ban

He has to ask his parents for permission first.

*Verzeihung / Entschuldigung, ist der Platz noch frei / brauchen Sie den Stuhl?*

*Erlauben Sie / Gestatten Sie, dass ich rauche? – Ja, kein Problem.*

*Stört es Sie, wenn ich rauche?*

*Kann ich / Könnte ich mal telefonieren?*

*Haben Sie etwas dagegen, wenn ich das Fenster wieder schliesse?*

*Kann ich hier parken?*

*Wer hat dir erlaubt, Kuchen zu naschen?*

*Wage es nicht, zu spät zu kommen.*

Excuse me, is this seat taken / do you need this chair?

May I smoke? – Yes, no problem.

Do you mind if I smoke?

Can I / Could I use the phone?

Do you mind if I shut the window again?

Can I park here?

Who said you could help yourself to cake?

Don't you dare be late.

# Reaktionen

## Reactions

e **\*Reaktion**, -en

**\*positiv** ↔ **\*negativ** **\*reagieren**

**neutral** reagieren

s **\*Gefühl**, -e / e **Emotion**, -en

Gefühle **\*zeigen** ↔

**unterdrücken** / **verdrängen**

(in) guter ↔ schlechter **\*Stimmung** sein

Wie fühlen Sie sich heute?

Geht's gut?

reaction

react positively ↔ negatively

react neutrally

feeling / emotion

show ↔ suppress / repress feelings

be in a good ↔ bad mood

How are you feeling today?

Everything OK?



Wie *\*schön*. ↔ Wie *\*schade*.

Schön / Gut, dass ... ↔ Schade, dass ...

So ein *\*Glück*. ↔ So ein *\*Pech*.

Fährst du morgen zurück? –

Ja, Gott sei Dank. ↔ Ja, *\*leider*.

Das freut mich aber (für dich). / Ich freue mich für Sie. / Das freut mich zu hören.

Ach, das tut mir aber (schrecklich) Leid. /

Das finde ich aber schade. / Das ist ja furchtbar.

How nice. ↔ What a pity.

It's nice/good that ... ↔ A pity that ...

How lucky. ↔ What bad luck.

Are you going back tomorrow? –

Yes, thank goodness. ↔ Yes, unfortunately.

I'm pleased (for you). / I'm pleased for you. / I'm pleased to hear that.

Oh, I'm (terribly) sorry. / That's a pity. / That's terrible.

e **Sympathie**, -n ↔ e **Antipathie**, -n

**\*gefallen** (gefällt, gefiel, hat gefallen) ↔

**missfallen** (missfällt, missfiel, hat missfallen)

Der Vorschlag gefällt mir nicht.

Wie hat dir das Konzert gefallen? – Gut,

ich mag / ich höre gern / ich liebe Mozart.

liking, affection ↔ antipathy

to like ↔ dislike

I don't like the suggestion.

How did you enjoy the concert? –

It was good, I like / I like listening to / I love Mozart.



**Wie gefällt es Ihnen hier?**

Sehr *\*gut*.

Wunderbar. / Fantastisch. / Herrlich.

Ich bin begeistert.

*\*Super!* (ugs.) / *\*Toll!* (ugs.) / *Spitze!*

(ugs.) / *Klasse!* (ugs.) / *Prima!* (ugs.)

Sehr *\*interessant*.

Naja, es geht.

Nicht so (gut).

Naja.

Es ist *\*langweilig* / *\*hässlich* / *\*schrecklich* hier.

How do you like it here?

Very much.

Wonderful. / Fantastic. / Splendid.

I'm delighted.

Super! / Great! / Great! / Marvellous! /

Fantastic!

Very interesting.

Well, it's OK.

Not so (good).

So so.

It's boring / ugly / awful here.

**Kommst du mit?**

Gute \*Idee. / Gut. / Einverstanden. /  
Meinetwegen.

Ja, warum nicht? / Ja, das geht. /  
Okay. / In Ordnung.

Nein, das geht leider nicht. / Nein, tut  
mir Leid. / Lieber nicht.

Ich weiß nicht so recht.

Ich habe leider keine Zeit. / Ich kann  
leider nicht.

Auf keinen Fall. / Kommt (gar) nicht in  
Frage.

Ein andermal vielleicht. / Gern, aber  
leider ...

Are you coming (too)?

Good idea. / Super. / Fine. /  
Alright.

Yes, why not? / Yes, that's alright. /  
OK. / OK.

No, sorry that's not possible. / No,  
sorry. / I'd prefer not to.

I'm not sure.

I'm afraid I have no time. / I'm  
afraid I can't.

Definitely not. / That's  
(completely) out of the question.

Maybe another time. / I'd love to,  
but unfortunately ...

**bejahen** / ja sagen ↔

**verneinen** / nein sagen

s \***Ja** ↔ s \***Nein**

ein definitives ↔

unentschiedenes Ja

Antworten Sie mit Ja oder Nein.

Ich kann mich nicht \***entscheiden**

(entschied, hat entschieden). /

\***entschließen** (entschloss, hat  
entschlossen).

\***Grundsätzlich** bin ich einverstanden.

affirm / say yes ↔ negate / say no

yes ↔ no

definite ↔ indecisive yes

Answer yes or no.

I can't decide.

In principle, I agree.

**Ja – nein – doch**

Isst du \*gern Schokolade? –

Ja, \*regelmäßig. ↔ Nein, die schmeckt  
mir nicht.

Ein bisschen Wasser? –

Ja bitte. ↔ Nein danke.

Essen Sie kein Fleisch? –

Doch, \*normalerweise schon.

Kommst du nicht gleich mit? –

Doch, einen Moment noch.

Do you like eating chocolate? –

Yes, regularly. ↔ No, I don't like it.

Some water? –

Yes, please. ↔ No, thanks.

Don't you eat meat? –

Yes, I do normally.

Aren't you coming now? –

Yes, in a minute.

The affirmative \***doch** is used if the question is formulated in the negative form with \***nicht** or \***kein**-.



- 2.1 Angaben zur Person**  
Personal data
- 2.2 Körperteile und Organe**  
Parts of the body and organs
- 2.3 Äußere Erscheinung**  
Outward appearance
- 2.4 Kindheit und Jugend**  
Childhood and youth
- 2.5 Erwachsenenalter**  
Adult life
- 2.6 Persönlichkeit und Verhalten**  
Personality and behaviour
- 2.7 Sinne und Sinneseindrücke**  
Senses and sensory impressions
- 2.8 Gefühle und Einstellungen**  
Feelings and attitudes
- 2.9 Ethik und Moral**  
Ethics and morality
- 2.10 Persönliche Beziehungen**  
Human relations
- 2.11 Sexualität**  
Sexuality
- 2.12 Leben und Tod**  
Life and death

# 2

**Der Mensch**  
**Human beings**

## Angaben zur Person

### Personal data

r * <b>Name</b> , -n	name
* <b>heißen</b> (hie, hat geheien)	be called, be sb's name
Wie heien Sie? / Wie ist Ihr Name?	What's your name?
Ich heie Sabine Bauer.	My name is Sabine Bauer.
Mein Name ist Bauer, Sabine Bauer.	My name is Bauer, Sabine Bauer.
Wie heit du? / Wie ist dein Name?	What's your name?
Ich heie Sabine. Und du?	My name's Sabine. And yours?
r * <b>Nachname</b> , -n	surname
Mein Nachname ist Bauer.	My surname is Bauer.
r * <b>Vorname</b> , -n	first name, Christian name
Mein Vorname ist Sabine.	My first name is Sabine.
Meine Vornamen sind Sabine Maria.	My first names are Sabine Maria.
Wie ist Ihr * <b>Geburtsname</b> ?	What is your maiden name?
Mein Geburtsname ist Bergmann.	My maiden name is Bergmann.
Sabine Bauer, geb. Bergmann	Sabine Bauer, ne Bergmann.
s * <b>Alphabet</b> / s ABC	alphabet
s lateinische / griechische / arabische Alphabet	Latin / Greek / Arabic alphabet
* <b>buchstabieren</b>	to spell
r * <b>Buchstabe</b>	letter
* <b>aussprechen</b> (spricht aus, hat ausgesprochen)	pronounce
Entschuldigung, wie spricht man Ihren Namen aus?	Excuse me, how do you pronounce your name?
r * <b>Spitzname</b> , -n	nickname
r <b>bername</b> , -n <i>schweiz.</i>	nickname
Mein Spitzname ist Bine.	My nickname is Bine.
Meine Freunde nennen mich Bine.	My friends call me Bine.
* <b>nennen</b> (nannte, hat genannt)	to call (sb)



The expression *Mchennamen* for the maiden name of a woman is usually replaced nowadays by the term *Geburtsname*, as it is possible for men to adopt their wife's surname when they marry.

s <b>Geburtsdatum</b> , -daten	date of birth
Sie ist am 6.5.1974 / am sechsten Mai 1974 geboren.	She was born on 6.5.1974 / on the sixth of May 1974.
Wann haben Sie / hast du Geburtstag? – Am 6. Mai.	When is your birthday? – On 6 <sup>th</sup> May.
r * <b>Geburtstag</b> , -e	birthday
Er hat heute Geburtstag.	It's his birthday today.
Sie hat nchsten Montag Geburtstag.	It's her birthday next Monday.

**Dates are written like this:**

6. Mai 1974 or 6. 5. 74 or 06.05.1974 (in forms)

1974 = neunzehnhundertvierundsiebzig

2001 = zweitausendeins



s * <b>Alter</b>	age
Wie alt sind Sie? / Wie alt bist du?	How old are you? / What age are you?
Ich bin 35.	I'm 35.
r * <b>Geburtsort</b> , -e	place of birth
r <b>Wohnort</b> , -e	place of residence
e <b>Nationalität</b> , -en /	nationality
e * <b>Staatsangehörigkeit</b> , -en	
Welche Staatsangehörigkeit haben Sie? –	What nationality are you? – I'm
Ich bin Deutsche / Deutscher.	German.
r <b>Familienstand</b>	marital status
* <b>ledig</b> / * <b>verheiratet</b> / <b>geschieden</b> /	single / married / divorced /
* <b>verwítwet</b>	widowed
s <b>Geschlecht</b> : männlich ↔ weiblich	sex: male ↔ female (in forms)
(in Formularen)	
e * <b>Größe</b>	height, size
* <b>groß</b> (größer, größt-)	tall, big
Wie groß sind Sie / bist du?	How tall are you? / What height are you?
s * <b>Gewicht</b>	weight
* <b>wiegen</b> (wog, hat gewogen)	weigh
Wie viel wiegen Sie / wiegst du?	How much do you weigh? / What weight are you?
e * <b>Religion</b> , -en	religion
Was ist Ihre Konfession?	What's your religion? / What religion are you?
e * <b>Adresse</b> , -n / die Anschrift, -en	address
Unter dieser Adresse bin ich immer zu erreichen.	I can always be reached at this address.

## Körperteile und Organe

### Parts of the body and organs

r * <b>Körper</b> , -	body
r * <b>Kopf</b> , =e	head
von Kopf bis Fuß	from head to toe
mit dem Kopf * <b>nicken</b>	to nod one's head
s <b>Gehirn</b> , -e	brain
s * <b>Haar</b> , -e	hair

Ich ließ mir die Haare schneiden

s \***Gesicht**, -er

e **Stirn**

die Stirn runzeln

s \***Auge**, -en

Sie hat blaue Augen.

mit den Augen zwinkern

e \***Nase**, -n

die Nase rümpfen

e **Backe**, -n / e **Wange**, -n

jn auf die Wange küssen

e **Sommersprosse**, -n

r Märfzenflecken, - *schweiz.*

s **Kinn**

r \***Mund**, -er

Mach bitte beim Essen den Mund zu!

e \***Stimme**, -n

Er hat eine sympathische Stimme.

r \***Zahn**, -e

ein Zahn wackelt

s **Gebiss**, -e

s (künstliche) Gebiss / die dritten Zähne *Pl*

e **Zunge**, -n

e **Lippe**, -n

s \***Ohr**, -en

s **Trömmelfell**

r \***Hals**, -e

den Hals recken

e **Kehle**, -n

e **Schulter**, -n

Er zuckte nur mit den Schultern /  
Achseln.

r \***Rücken**, -

r \***Arm**, -e

den Arm beugen

r **Ell(en)bogen**, -

e \***Hand**, -e

jm zur Begrüßung die Hand geben

r \***Finger**, -

r Ringfinger / r Zeigefinger /

r Mittelfinger / r Daumen, -

r **Fingernagel**, -

sich die Fingernägel schneiden

s \***Bein**, -e

s \***Knie**, Knje ['kni:ə]

Kniebeugen machen

I had my *hair* cut.

face

forehead, brow

knit/wrinkle one's brow

eye

She has blue eyes.

wink, blink

nose

wrinkle / turn up / look down one's

nose

cheek

kiss sb on the cheek

freckle

freckle

chin

mouth

Please keep your mouth shut

when you're eating.

voice

He has a pleasant voice.

tooth

a tooth is loose, have a loose tooth

(set of) teeth

(set of) false teeth / denture(s)

tongue

lip

ear

ear-drum

neck

crane one's neck

throat

shoulder

He just shrugged his shoulders.

back

arm

bend one's arm

elbow

hand

shake sb's hand (in greeting)

finger

ring finger / index finger /

middle finger / thumb

(finger)nail

cut one's fingernails

leg

knee

do knee-bends



das Knie beugen	bend one's knee
r * <b>Fuß</b> , =e	foot
r <b>Zeh</b> , -en	toe
auf Zehenspitzen gehen	walk on tiptoe



### Expressions with parts of the body

*Sie muss sich ihre Probleme von der Seele reden.* – She needs to get it off her chest.

*Ich stecke bis über beide Ohren in Arbeit.* – I'm up to my ears in work.

*Er ist bis über beide Ohren verliebt.* – He's head-over-heels in love.

*Er macht keinen Finger krumm für mich.* – He won't lift a finger for me.

*Halt ihn dir ja vom Leib!* – Don't let him anywhere near you.

*Sie lebt von der Hand in den Mund.* – She lives from hand to mouth.

*Er ist ein Geizhals.* – He's a skinflint.

*Ich bringe es nicht übers Herz, ihr die Wahrheit zu sagen.* –

I don't have the heart to tell her the truth.

*Diese Nachricht ist mir wirklich unter die Haut gegangen.* –

This piece of news really got under my skin.

*Was ist denn dir für eine Laus über die Leber gelaufen?* – What's eating you?

*Das ist mir ziemlich an die Nieren gegangen.* – That really got to me.

*Das Wort liegt mir auf der Zunge.* – The word's on the tip of my tongue.

### German uses possessive adjectives less often with reference to parts of the body and clothing.



*Er hat die Nase gerümpft.* – He turned up his nose.

*Sie zog sich die Schuhe an.* – She put on her shoes.

*Er zuckte mit den Schultern.* – He shrugged his shoulders.

e * <b>Brust</b> , =e	breast, breasts
r <b>Brustkorb</b>	chest
dem Baby die Brust geben	breast-feed the baby
e <b>Rippe</b> , -n	rib
s * <b>Herz</b> , -en	heart
Mein Herz klopfte heftig.	My heart was beating hard.
e <b>Lunge</b> , -n	lung(s)
e <b>Leber</b> , -n	liver
e <b>Niere</b> , -n	kidney
r * <b>Magen</b> , =	stomach
r * <b>Bauch</b> , =e	belly, stomach
auf nüchternen Magen	on an empty stomach
r <b>Unterleib</b> , -er	abdomen
r <b>Darm</b> , =e	bowels, intestines
s <b>Gesäß</b> , -e / r <b>Hjintern</b> , - / r <b>Po</b> , -s	buttocks / behind / bottom
r <b>After</b> / r <b>Anus</b>	anus
e <b>Blase</b> , -n	bladder
r <b>Urin</b> / r <b>Harn</b>	urine
<b>urinieren</b>	urinate
pinkeln <i>ugs.</i>	pee, piddle

die <b>Genitalien</b> / die <b>Geschlechtsteile</b>	genitals
die männlichen / weiblichen Geschlechtsteile	the male / female genitals
e <b>Vagina</b> / e <b>Scheide</b>	vagina
r <b>Eierstock</b> , =e	ovary
e <b>Gebärmutter</b> / r <b>Uterus</b>	womb / uterus
r <b>Penis</b>	penis
e <b>Prostata</b>	prostate (gland)
r <b>Kreislauf</b>	circulation
s * <b>Blut</b>	blood
r <b>Blutspender</b> , - //	blood donor
e <b>Blutspenderin</b> , -nen	
e <b>Vene</b> , -n / e <b>Arterie</b> , -n / e <b>Ader</b> , -n	vein / artery / blood-vessel
e Krampfader, -n	varicose vein
s <b>Skelett</b> , -e	skeleton
r <b>Knochen</b> , -	bone
s <b>Gelenk</b> , -e	joint
e * <b>Haut</b>	skin
r <b>Muskel</b> , -n	muscle
e <b>Sehne</b> , -n	tendon, sinew
r <b>Nerv</b> , -en	nerve
Sie hat gute ↔ schlechte Nerven.	She has strong ↔ bad nerves.

## Äußere Erscheinung Outward appearance

* <b>groß</b> (größer, größt-)	tall, big
Er ist 1,98 m groß, also jetzt schon größer als sein Vater.	He is 1.98 m tall, so already taller than his father.
* <b>klein</b>	small, little
Sie hat kleine Füße.	She has small feet.
* <b>schlank</b>	slim, slender
Sie ist groß und schlank.	She is tall and slim.
* <b>dünn</b>	thin
* <b>mager</b> / dürr <i>ugs.</i>	skinny / thin
<b>hager</b>	gaunt
* <b>dick</b>	fat
rundlich / mollig	plump / chubby
Sie hat ein rundliches Gesicht.	She has a chubby face.
corpulent / beiebt / füllig	stout / portly / ample / full / corpulent
Er ist sehr corpulent.	He is very stout / portly.
* <b>kräftig</b> (gebaut) / stämmig	sturdy / burly / well-built
<b>muskulös</b>	muscular
ein muskulöser Körper	a muscular body

**untergewichtig** ↔ **übergewichtig**  
**\*breit(schultrig)**

**\*hübsch** ↔ **\*hässlich**

ein hübsches Gesicht

**\*schön**

Du hast **wunderschöne** Augen.

gut aussehend

ein gut aussehender Mann /

eine gut aussehende Frau

**attraktiv**

underweight ↔ overweight  
 broad(-shouldered)

pretty ↔ ugly

a pretty face

beautiful

You have beautiful eyes.

good-looking

a good-looking man /

a good-looking woman

attractive

### Euphemisms

*Frau Mayer ist etwas füllig geworden. (= Sie ist dick geworden.)* – Frau Mayer has put on a bit of weight.

*Sie ist vollschlank. (= Sie ist dick.)* – She is plump.

*Er ist von kräftiger Statur. (= Er ist dick.)* – He is a man of sturdy build.



s **\*Gesicht**, -er

ein schmales / ovales / rundes / rundliches

Gesicht

e **Gesichtsfarbe** / r **Teint** [tē:]

eine gesunde Gesichtsfarbe haben

**\*blass**

Warum bist du heute so blass? Bist du

krank?

**\*bleich**

Sie wurde kreidebleich vor Schreck.

**\*rot werden**

Sie wurde rot vor Verlegenheit.

s **\*Auge**, -n

blaue / grüne / braune Augen

**strahlen**

Sie strahlt vor Freude.

e **Falte**, -n

**fältig / runzelig**

s **\*Haar**, -e

Er hat blonde / braune / schwarze / rote /  
graue Haare.

Er hat kurze / lange / glatte / lockige Haare.

In letzter Zeit fallen mir die Haare aus.

e **Frisur**, -en

Ich möchte mal wieder eine neue Frisur  
ausprobieren.

face

a narrow / oval / round / roundish

face

complexion

have a healthy colour

pale

Why are you so pale today? Are

you ill?

pale

She went white as a sheet *with*

fear.

go red

She went red *with* embarrassment.

eye

blue / green / brown eyes

beam

She is beaming with joy / delight.

wrinkle

wrinkled

hair

He has blond / brown / black / red /  
grey *hair*.

He has short / long / straight / curly  
hair.

I've been losing some hair recently.

hairstyle

I'd like to try out a new hairstyle.

**gekämmt** ↔ **ungekämmt**

**zerzaust** ↔ **gut frisiert**

e **Blondine**, -n

r **Zopf**, =e

Sie trägt einen Zopf.

e **Perücke**, -n

Sie trägt eine Perücke.

Sein Haar lichtet sich.

**\*dicht** ↔ **schütter**

Er hat dichtes ↔ schütteres Haar.

e **Glätze**, -n

Er bekommt langsam eine Glatze.

Bereits mit 35 Jahren hatte er eine Glatze.

r **\*Bart**, =e

r Schnurrbart / r Vollbart / r Drei-Tage-Bart

kempt, combed ↔ unkempt,

uncombed

dishevelled, tousled ↔ beautifully

kempt

blonde

plait, braid, pigtail

She wears her hair in / has a pigtail.

wig, hairpiece

She wears a wig.

His hair is thinning.

thick ↔ thin

He has thick ↔ thin hair.

bald head

He's slowly going bald.

He was bald at the (early) age  
of 35.

beard

moustache / full beard /

three-day-old beard



### Expressions to do with hair

*Lass dir deshalb keine grauen Haare wachsen.* – Don't lose any sleep over it.

*Da stehen mir ja die Haare zu Berge!* – It makes my hair stand on end.

*Er findet immer ein Haar in der Suppe.* – He's always finding fault with everything.

*Warum lässt du nie ein gutes Haar an ihr?* – Why are you always picking her to pieces?

*Ihr frisst mir noch die Haare vom Kopf!* – You're eating me out of house and home.

*Sie hat Haare auf den Zähnen.* – She's a tough customer.

*Das ist doch haarsträubend!* – But that's outrageous.

*Peter kann niemandem ein Haar krümmen.* – Peter couldn't harm a flea.

*Aber das ist doch an den Haaren herbeigezogen!* – That's a bit far-fetched.

*Das wäre um ein Haar schief gegangen.* – That very nearly went wrong.

*Die zwei liegen sich immer in den Haaren.* – Those two are always at loggerheads.

*Sie haben sich mal wieder in die Haare gekriegt.* – They got into a squabble again.

*Das ist doch Haarspalterei!* – That's just splitting hairs.

e **\*Kleidung** Sg

Sie ist immer **elegant** / **modisch** /

**\*schick** / **\*chic** gekleidet.

Sie ist **unmodisch** / **schlampig**

gekleidet.

Sie trägt einen Pullover und einen Rock.

clothing, clothes, dress

She is always stylishly /  
fashionably / trendily dressed.

She is unfashionably / slovenly  
dressed.

She is wearing a pullover and a  
skirt.

**gepflegt** ↔ **un gepflegt**

Sein ungepflegtes Äußeres finde ich  
schrecklich.

**\*schmutzig** / **schmuddelig**

**vergammelt**

**zerknittert**

well groomed ↔ badly groomed

I find his unkempt appearance  
terrible.

dirty / grubby

shabby, scruffy

rumpled

# Kindheit und Jugend

## Childhood and youth

s <b>*Baby</b> , -s [be:bi]	baby
s <b>Neugeborene</b> , -n	new-born baby
s Babyalter	babyhood
* <b>wachsen</b> (wächst, wuchs, ist gewachsen)	grow
s <b>Kleinkind</b> , -er	toddler, infant, small child
e <b>Kindheit</b> / s <b>Kindesalter</b>	childhood
im Kindesalter	in childhood
In diesem Haus hat meine Mutter von Kindheit an gewohnt.	My mother has lived in this house since she was a child / since her childhood.
eine glückliche Kindheit erleben	have a happy childhood
s <b>*Kjnd</b> , -er	child
<b>kjndlich</b>	childlike
Sie ist noch sehr kindlich.	She is still very childlike.
Sie ist ein <b>*Einzelkind</b> .	She is an only child.
e <b>Kjnderbetreuung</b>	child care

There are various forms of *Kinderbetreuung* = childcare for children from 0-6:  
**Kinderkrippe** = creche (state or privately run for children of 0-3);  
**\*Kindergarten** = kindergarten (state or privately run for children 3-6);  
 A **Tagesmutter** (= childminder) looks after a child while the parents are at work.  
 A **Babysitter** (= babysitter) is employed just for a few hours during the day or evening.



s (Kinder-) <b>Heim</b> , -e	(children's) home
r <b>*Betreuer</b> , -// e <b>*Betreuerin</b> , -nen	person who is in charge of / looking after sb
e <b>Wiege</b> , -n	cradle
Das wurde ihr in die Wiege gelegt.	She inherited that.
von der Wiege bis zur Bahre	from the cradle to the grave
s <b>Kjnderbett</b> , -en	cot, crib
r <b>Kjnderwagen</b> , - / = <i>südd.</i>	pram, baby carriage
r Buggy, -s [ba:gi]	pushchair, stroller
r <b>Schnüller</b> , -	dummy, pacifier
r Nuggi, - <i>schweiz.</i>	dummy, pacifier
s <b>*Spielzeug</b> / e <b>Spielsache</b> , -n	toys / toy
<b>*spielen</b>	to play
e Spielzeugeisenbahn, -en	toy train
s Spielzeugauto, -s	toy car
s <b>Stofftier</b> , -e	soft toy
r <b>Teddybär</b> , -en	teddy bear
s <b>Bilderbuch</b> , =er	picture book
ein Bilderbuch anschauen	look at a picture book
ein Buch / Bilderbuch vorlesen	read a book / picture book

s \***Märchen**, -  
ein Märchen erzählen  
r **Stift**, -e  
r Buntstift, -e  
r Wachsmalstift, -e  
\***malen**  
r Malkasten, =  
r Malblock, =e  
s Malbuch, =er  
e \***Puppe**, -n  
s Puppenhaus, =er  
r Puppenwagen, - / = *südd.*  
r **Comic**, -s ['kɔmɪk]  
s **Puzzle**, -s ['pʌzl *auch* 'pʊzl]

fairytale  
tell a fairytale  
pen, pencil  
coloured pencil  
wax crayon  
paint  
paintbox  
colouring pad  
colouring book  
doll  
doll's house  
doll's pram, carriage  
comic  
jigsaw (puzzle)



### Typical children's games

#### indoors

*Karten spielen* play cards  
*Verstecken spielen* play hide and seek  
*mit Puppen / \*Autos /*  
*r (Modell-)\*Eisenbahn spielen* play with dolls / cars / a train set  
*mit Playmobil spielen* play with Playmobil  
*Vater – Mutter – Kind spielen* play father – mother – child  
*Brettspiele machen* play board games  
*malen / basteln / kneten* paint / make things / play with  
Play-Doh  
*am Computer spielen* play at the computer

#### outdoors

*Dreirad fahren* ride a tricycle  
*Roller fahren* ride a scooter  
*Kickboard fahren* go kickboarding  
*\*Fahrrad fahren / \*Rad fahren /*  
*Velo fahren (schweiz.)* ride a bicycle  
*Inlineskates fahren* go inline-skating  
*Skateboard fahren* go skateboarding  
*Schlittschuh fahren* go skating  
*Schlitten fahren* go sledging/tobogganing  
*am Kinderspielplatz spielen* playing at a children's playground  
*rutschen* go on a slide  
*schaukeln* go on a swing  
*im Sandkasten spielen* play in the sandpit  
*Sandburgen bauen* build sandcastles  
*wippen* go on a seesaw  
*Ball spielen* play ball (games)  
*Fangen spielen* play catch  
*Räuber und Gendarm spielen* play cops and robbers  
*eine Schnitzeljagd machen* do a paper-chase

\***jung** (jünger, jüngst-)

**jugendlich**

r/e \***Jugendliche**, -n

junge Leute *Pl*

e \***Jugend** *Sg*

die heutige Jugend / die Jugend von heute  
in meiner Jugend / als ich jung war

r **Flegel**, -

r Schlingel, -

r/e **Minderjährige**, -n

**minderjährig** ↔ **volljährig** sein

r/e **Heranwachsende**, -n

e **Pubertät**

Meine Tochter ist in der Pubertät.

r **Teenager**, - [ˈtiːneːdʒə]

r/e **Volljährige**, -n

s **Erwachsenwerden**

r Jugendclub, -s

s Jugendzentrum, -en

e Jugendherberge, -n

e Jugendarbeitslosigkeit

jugendfrei

e Jugendliteratur

young

youthful

youth (= young person)

young people

youth (= period in sb's life; *young people collectively*)

today's youth / the youth of today  
in my youth / when I was young

lout, yob

rascal

minor, underage person

be underage ↔ be of age

adolescent

puberty

My daughter is in her puberty.

teenager

adolescents who have attained

their majority / who are of age

growing up, achieving adulthood

youth club

youth centre

youth hostel

youth unemployment

U-certificate rated, suitable for

people under 18

literature for young people

## Erwachsenenalter Adult life

r / e \***Erwachsene**, -n

s \***Alter** *Sg*

im Alter von vierzig Jahren

im hohen Alter

\***alt** (älter, ältest-)

Wie alt sind Sie?

alt werden ↔ jung bleiben

Wir werden langsam älter.

alt sein / aussehen / wirken

das **mittlere Lebensalter** (ca. 40-65)

eine Frau mittleren Alters

Sie ist in den besten Jahren.

im reifen Alter von 50 Jahren

adult

age / old age

at the age of forty

in old age, at an advanced age

old

How old are you? / What's your age?

grow/get old ↔ stay young

We're getting on (in years).

be / look / seem old

middle age

a middle-aged woman

She's in her prime.

at the mature / ripe age of 50

## Euphemisms

*eine ältere Person**ein betagter Mann**ein Mensch im fortgeschrittenen Alter**eine Person im reifen Alter*

an elderly person

an aged man

a person of advanced years

a person of a mature / ripe old age

Er ist über die besten Jahre hinaus. / Er ist nicht mehr der Jüngste.

im vorgerückten Alter

das Herannahen des Alters

Sie erreichte ein hohes Alter.

ein alternder Künstler

e **Lebenserwartung****Wechseljahre** Pl

in die Wechseljahre kommen

He's past his prime. / He's no longer a youngster.

at an advanced age

the approach of old age

She lived to a ripe old age.

an aging artist

life expectancy

menopause, the change of life

reach the menopause, see/

experience the onset of the

menopause

old people / folk

pensioner, senior citizen

pensioner, senior citizen

alte Leute

r **Rentner**, - // e **Rentnerin**, -nen

r Pensionist, -en // e Pensionistin, -nen

*österreich.*r/e Pensionierte, -n *schweiz.*e **\*Rente**, -n / e **\*Pension**, -en

in Rente/Pension gehen /

sich pensionieren lassen /

in den (vorzeitigen) Ruhestand gehen

r **Frührentner**, - //e **Frührentnerin**, -nenr/e frühzeitig Pensionierte, -n *schweiz.*

pensioner, senior citizen

pension

go into retirement / retire / go into

(early) retirement

person who has retired early /

taken early retirement

person who has retired early /

taken early retirement

(early) retirement (from work)

s (vorzeitige) Ausscheiden aus dem Arbeitsleben

im Rentenalter

s **\*Altersheim**, -e / s **\*Altenheim**, -e /s **Seniorenheim**, -e**altern**

Durch seine schwere körperliche Arbeit ist er schnell gealtert.

typische **Altersbeschwerden**e **Alterserscheinung**

Pigmentflecken auf der Haut sind eine typische Alterserscheinung.

**altersbedingt**e **Langlebigkeit**

nachlassende körperliche Energie

in seinen letzten Lebensjahren

**altersschwach** / **gebrechlich**

in retirement

old people's home

grow old to age

Hard physical labour has made him age quickly.

typical complaints of old age

sign / symptom of old age

Pigmentation marks on the skin

are a typical sign of old age.

due to (old) age

longevity

declining physical energy

in his declining years

decrepit



ein gebrechlicher alter Mann  
bei schlechter Gesundheit sein  
s **Pflegeheim**, -e  
auf einen Platz in einem Pflegeheim  
warten

### Essen auf Rädern

r **Verfall** Sg

### senil

e Senilität  
e Alzheimerkrankheit  
an der Alzheimerkrankheit leiden  
**verkalkt sein** (ist, war, ist gewesen)

a decrepit old man  
be *in* poor health  
nursing home  
wait for a place in a nursing home

meals on wheels  
decline  
senile  
senility  
Alzheimer's disease  
suffer from Alzheimer's disease  
be senile

## Persönlichkeit und Verhalten Personality and behaviour

sich **\*verhalten**

In dieser Situation hätte ich mich anders  
verhalten.

s **\*Verhalten** Sg

Manchmal ist sein Verhalten unmöglich.

sich **benennen** (benimmt, benahm, hat  
benommen)

Die Kleine hat sich gut / schlecht  
benommen.

s **Benennen** Sg

auf gutes Benehmen achten

e **\*Rücksicht**, -en

Du sollst Rücksicht nehmen auf andere!

sich **blamieren**

Sie hat sich vor allen blamiert.

jm etw **peinlich sein** (ist, war,  
ist gewesen)

Entschuldigen Sie bitte, das ist mir sehr  
peinlich!

behave

I would have behaved differently  
in this situation.

behaviour

His behaviour is sometimes  
impossible.

behave

The little girl behaved well / badly.

behaviour

set store by good behaviour

consideration

You should *show* consideration *for*  
others.

make a fool of / disgrace oneself

She disgraced herself in front of  
everybody.

be embarrassed / feel bad / feel  
awkward about sth

I'm sorry, I feel very bad about  
this.

### Adjectives referring to a person's behaviour

*geduldig* ↔ *ungeduldig*

*\*höflich* ↔ *\*unhöflich*

*\*freundlich* ↔ *\*unfreundlich*

*anständig* ↔ *unanständig*

patient ↔ impatient

polite ↔ impolite

friendly ↔ unfriendly

decent, respectable ↔ indecent,  
rude



\***reif** ↔ \***unreif**  
 \***vernünftig** ↔ \***unvernünftig**  
**bescheiden** ↔ **unbescheiden**  
 \***sympathisch** ↔ \***unsympathisch**  
 \***fair** / **gerecht** ↔ \***unfair** / **ungerecht**  
**kultiviert** ↔ **unkultiviert**  
**rücksichtsvoll** ↔ **rücksichtslos**  
**anspruchsvoll** ↔ **anspruchlos**

**taktvoll** ↔ **taktlos**  
**liebenswürdig** ↔ **unverschämt**  
**artig** / **brav** ↔ \***fröch**  
 \***klug** ↔ \***dumm**  
**launisch**  
 \***merkwürdig**  
**vornehm**

The antonyms (= opposites) are usually formed with the prefix **un-** or the suffix **-los**.



mature ↔ immature  
 sensible ↔ stupid  
 modest ↔ bold, presumptuous  
 nice, pleasant ↔ unpleasant,  
 disagreeable  
 fair, just ↔ unfair, unjust  
 refined ↔ uncultured  
 considerate ↔ inconsiderate  
 demanding ↔ modest,  
 unassuming  
 tactful ↔ tactless  
 kind, friendly ↔ insolent  
 well-behaved, good ↔ cheeky  
 clever ↔ stupid  
 moody  
 strange, odd, curious  
 distinguished, refined, posh

### e **Persönlichkeit**

Sie hat eine starke Persönlichkeit.

s **Wesen**, –

Sie besitzt ein sympathisches Wesen.

r \***Charakter**, Charaktere

Er hat einen starken Charakter.

personality

She has a strong personality.

nature

She has a pleasant nature / an appealing personality.

character

He has a strong character.

### Adjectives describing a person's character

\***ehrlich** ↔ \***unehrlich**  
**sensibel** ↔ **unsensibel**  
**aufrichtig** ↔ **unaufrichtig**  
**ausgeglichen** ↔ **unausgeglichen**  
**gehemmt** ↔ **ungehemmt**  
**selbstsüchtig** ↔ **selbstlos**  
**egoistisch** ↔ **altruistisch**  
**mitfühlend** ↔ **mitleidos** / **wenig mitfühlend**  
 \***offen** ↔ **verschlossen**

honest ↔ dishonest  
 sensitive ↔ insensitive  
 honest, sincere ↔ insincere  
 (well-)balanced, equable ↔  
 moody, unstable  
 inhibited ↔ uninhibited  
 selfish ↔ unselfish  
 egoistic ↔ altruistic  
 sympathetic ↔ unsympathetic  
 open ↔ reserved, taciturn

### s **Temperament**

Monika hat viel Temperament.

**temperamentvoll**

\***fröhlich** / \***lustig** ↔ \***traurig**

### **cholerisch**

r \***Gegensatz**, = / s \***Gegenteil**, –e

Im Gegensatz zu ihr ist er eher ruhig.

temperament

Monika is very lively.

lively, vivacious

happy, cheerful, merry ↔ sad,  
 unhappy

choleric

difference, opposite

Unlike her, he is more calm.

die **Beherrschung verlieren**(sich) **\*verändern**

Sabine hat sich in letzter Zeit ziemlich verändert. Findest du nicht auch?

gute ↔ schlechte **\*Laune** haben**gut gelaunt** ↔ **trübsinnig / bedrückt**

Anna machte heute einen sehr bedrückten Eindruck.

Unsere Lehrerin hatte heute schlechte

Laune. / Unsere Lehrerin war heute

schlecht gelaunt.

lose one's self-control

to change

Sabine has changed a lot recently.

Don't you think so too?

be in a good ↔ bad mood

cheerful ↔ gloomy / depressed

Anna gave the impression of being / seemed very depressed today.

Our teacher *was in* a bad mood

today.

**Adjectives that are important in the working world***fähig* ↔ *unfähig**\*erfahren* ↔ *\*unerfahren**fleißig* ↔ *\*faul**flexibel* ↔ *inflexibel**\*zuverlässig / verlässlich* ↔ *\*unzuverlässig**verantwortungsbewusst* ↔ *verantwortungslos**belastbar* ↔ *wenig belastbar**anpassungsfähig* ↔ *nicht anpassungsfähig**bescheiden* ↔ *eingebildet*

(cap)able ↔ incompetent

experienced ↔ inexperienced

hard-working, diligent ↔ lazy

flexible ↔ inflexible

reliable ↔ unreliable

responsible ↔ irresponsible

tough, able to withstand stress ↔

not very resilient to / not very able

to withstand stress

adaptable ↔ inflexible

modest ↔ conceited

**gütig** ↔ **boshaft**

ein boshafter Blick/Nachbar

**erbarmungslos**

Er nützt andere erbarmungslos aus.

**korrupt** [kɔ'rupt]

ein korrupter Politiker

benevolent ↔ malevolent

a malevolent look/neighbour

pitiless, merciless

He's pitiless in exploiting others.

**corrupt**

a corrupt politician

**Beware of these false friends!****German***brav**charakterlos**genial**sensibel**selbstbewusst**sympathisch***English**

well-behaved

devoid of principles

brilliant, gifted

sensitive

self-confident

nice, likeable

**English**

brave

characterless

genial

sensible

self-conscious

sympathetic

**German***mutig, tapfer**farblos, \*langweilig**\*herzlich, leutselig**vernünftig**gehemmt**mitfühlend***\*konservativ** ↔ **progressiv****\*tolerant** ↔ **intolerant / engstirnig****\*großzügig** ↔ **geizig / knauserig****lässig / locker** ↔ **pingelig**

conservative ↔ progressive

tolerant/ broad-minded ↔

intolerant / narrow-minded

generous ↔ stingy / mean

easy-going ↔ fussy

## The complete lack of a characteristic can be expressed with

Es mangelt ihm/ihr an (+D) ...:

Es mangelt ihr vollkommen an Ehrgeiz / \*Mut / \*Humor / Mitleid / Talent. – She's completely devoid of ambition / courage / humour / pity / talent.

**charmant** ↔ **uncharmant**

Sie besitzt keinerlei Charme.

**optimistisch** ↔ **pessimistisch**

**kontaktfreudig** ↔ **zurückhaltend**

**\*interessant** ↔ **\*langweilig**

**\*stark** (stärker, stärkst-) ↔ **\*schwach**

(schwächer, schwächst-)

**zäh** / **\*hart** (härter, härtest-) ↔

\*schwach

ein harter Bursche / Typ

**mutig** ↔ **feige**

ein feiger Anschlag

r **Feigling**, -e

Er ist ein ziemlicher Feigling.

**\*neugierig**

Sei nicht so neugierig!

**entspannt** ↔ **angespannt**

**\*nervös**

**\*durcheinander** sein

**\*ruhig** ↔ **aufgeregt**

Er war vor der Operation sehr ruhig.

(sich) **\*aufregen**

Meine Mutter regt sich immer auf, wenn

ich spät nach Hause komme.

**respektvoll** ↔ **\*frech**

Sei nicht so frech zu deinen Eltern.

charming ↔ uncharming

She's devoid of any charm.

optimistic ↔ pessimistic

outgoing, sociable ↔ reserved

interesting ↔ boring

strong ↔ weak

tough / hard ↔ weak

a tough character

brave, courageous ↔ cowardly

a cowardly attack

coward

He's a little coward.

inquisitive, nosy, curious

Don't be so nosy / inquisitive!

relaxed ↔ tense

nervous

be confused

calm ↔ agitated

He was very calm before the

operation.

get worked up

My mother always gets worked

up, when I come home late.

respectful ↔ cheeky, sassy

Don't be cheeky to your parents.

There are a number of expressions with the preposition **wie** that are used to describe people:

Er / Sie ist ...

frech wie Oskar.

mutig wie ein Löwe.

\*kalt wie eine Hundeschauze.

fleißig wie eine Biene.

schlau wie ein Fuchs.

sanft wie ein Lamm.

störrisch wie ein Maultier.

stur wie ein Bock.

\*stolz wie ein Pfau.

dumm wie Bohnenstroh.

He / She is ...

a cheeky devil.

brave as a lion.

cold as ice.

busy as a bee.

crafty as a fox.

gentle as a lamb.

obstinate as a mule.

stubborn as a mule.

vein as a peacock.

thick as two short planks.

# Sinne und Sinneseindrücke

## Senses and sensory impressions

r * <b>Sinn</b> , -e	sense
die fünf Sinne	the five senses
r <b>Gesichtssinn</b>	sense of sight
r <b>Gehörsinn</b>	sense of hearing
r <b>Geruchssinn</b>	sense of smell
r <b>Geschmackssinn</b>	sense of taste
r <b>Tastsinn</b>	sense of touch
sinnlich	sensual, sensuous
Sie ist eine sehr sinnliche Frau.	She's a very sensual woman.
r <b>Sinneseindruck</b> , =e	sensory impression
r * <b>Eindruck</b> , =e	impression
Wir haben den Eindruck, dass ...	We have / are under the impression that ...
s * <b>Gefühl</b> , -e	feeling, sensation
Ich hatte das Gefühl, dass ...	I had the feeling that ...
e <b>Empfindung</b> , -en	sensation
<b>empfindlich</b>	sensitive
Meine Tochter ist extrem schmerzempfindlich.	My daughter is extremely sensitive to pain.
Sei doch nicht immer so empfindlich!	Don't be so touchy.
r <b>Orientierungssinn</b>	sense of direction
Sie hat einen guten Orientierungssinn.	She has a good sense of direction.
* <b>sehen</b> (sieht, sah, hat gesehen)	see
Siehst du den Schmetterling dort oben?	Can you see the butterfly up there?
e <b>Sicht</b>	(sense of) sight
Sie ist <b>kurzsichtig</b> ↔ <b>weitsichtig</b> .	She is shortsighted, nearsighted ↔ long-sighted.
Das war eine sehr kurzsichtige Entscheidung.	That was a very short-sighted decision.
Langsam kam der Zug in Sicht.	Slowly the train came into view.
<b>in Sichtweite von</b>	within sight of
Eine Lösung des Problems ist noch nicht in Sicht.	A solution <i>to</i> the problem is not yet in sight.
<b>sichtbar</b> ↔ <b>unsichtbar</b>	visible ↔ invisible
* <b>schauen</b>	look
Was ist los? Warum schaust du so traurig?	What's the matter? Why are you looking so sad?
Schauen Sie sich das mal bitte an!	Just have / take a look at this, will you, please?
sich etw * <b>ansehen</b> / * <b>anschauen</b>	(have / take a) look at sth
Möchten Sie sich den Film auch ansehen / anschauen?	Would you like to see / watch / have a look at the film, too?
* <b>beobachten</b>	watch, observe

e **Beobachtung**, -en

Haben Sie letzte Nacht irgendetwas

Besonderes beobachtet?

Notiz nehmen von

Sie nahm keine Notiz von ihm.

**\*bemerken**

Hat denn niemand den Diebstahl bemerkt?

**wahrnehmen**e **Wahrnehmung**, -en

Niemand nahm wahr, dass Ralf gegangen war.

r **\*Blick**, -e

Er warf nur einen kurzen Blick auf das Foto.

r **Blickkontakt**

Blickkontakt aufnehmen mit jm

Es war Liebe auf den ersten Blick.

Das sieht man doch auf einen Blick!

Wir bekamen ihn nur kurz zu Gesicht.

e **\*Brille**, -n

Seit kurzem muss ich eine Brille tragen.

Deine neue Brille gefällt mir.

e Brille **\*abnehmen** (nimmt ab, nahm ab, hat abgenommen) ↔ **aufsetzen**e **Kontaktlinse**, -n**\*blind** sein

observation

Did you observe anything unusual last night?

take notice of

She took no notice of him.

notice

Didn't anyone notice the theft?

perceive, be(come) aware (of)

perception

Nobody noticed / was aware that Ralf had gone.

glance

He just took / cast a quick glance at the photo.

eye-contact

establish eye-contact with sb

It was love at first sight.

You can see that at first glance.

We only caught a brief glimpse of him.

(pair of) glasses

I've had to start wearing glasses.

I like your new glasses.

take off ↔ put on glasses

contact lens

be blind

*Er war wie von Sinnen.* – It was as if he had taken leave of his senses.*Er ist nicht ganz bei Sinnen.* – He's gone out of his mind.*Dafür hat sie einen sechsten Sinn.* – She has a sixth sense for that sort of thing.*Mir steht jetzt nicht der Sinn nach Reden.* – I don't feel like talking just now.*Das geht mir nicht mehr aus dem Sinn.* – I just can't get that out of my mind.*Sie macht alles ohne Sinn und Verstand.* – She did everything without rhyme or reason.*Das ist ganz in meinem Sinn.* – I agree with that completely.*Damit habe ich nichts im Sinn.* – I want nothing to do with that.*Das ist nicht im Sinne des Erfinders.* – That's not the idea.s **\*Ohr**, -en

Ich werde die Ohren offen halten.

s **Geräusch**, -e

Was war das denn für ein Geräusch?

**\*hören**

Hast du das Geräusch gehört?

jn **kommen hören**

Tut mir Leid, ich habe Sie nicht kommen hören.

**Radio hören**

ear

I'll keep my ears open.

sound, noise

What was that noise?

hear

Did you hear that noise?

hear sb coming

Sorry, I didn't hear you (come).

listen to the radio

**\*zuhören**

Warum hörst du mir nicht zu?

r **Kräch** / r **\*Lärm**

Ich kann diesen Lärm hier nicht aushalten.

(sich) **\*gewöhnen** an +A

Langsam gewöhnt er sich an den Lärm in der Straße.

e **\*Gewohnheit**, -en

**\*laut** ↔ **\*leise**

Sprechen Sie bitte etwas lauter.

das Gerät lauter ↔ leiser stellen

geräuschvoll ↔ geräuschlos

Die Klimaanlage ist zu laut.

**\*ruhig** / **\*stille**

Sei doch mal bitte ruhig!

e **\*Ruhe** / e **\*Stille**

s **Gehör**

Er ist ein bisschen **schwerhörig**.

s **Hörgerät**, -e

**\*taub**

**taubstumm**

Er ist taubstumm.

listen

Why aren't you listening (to me)?

noise, racket, din

I can't stand this noise (here).

get used to

Slowly, he's getting used to the noise in the street.

habit

loud ↔ quiet

Can you speak a bit louder, please?

turn the volume up / down

noisy ↔ silent, noiseless

The air-conditioning is too noisy.

quiet / silent

Can't you be quiet, please?

quiet, silence / silence

hearing

He's a little hard of hearing.

hearing aid

deaf

deaf-mute

He's deaf and dumb.

**Expressions with hören**

*Ich habe ihn nicht gehört.* – I didn't hear him.

*Haben Sie auch etwas darüber gehört?* – Did you hear about it, too?

*Unser Hund hört auf den Namen Poldi.* – Our dog answers to the name Poldi.

*Hast du mal wieder etwas von Susanne gehört?* – Have you heard from Susanne (again / at all)?

*Lass mal wieder was von dir hören!* – Keep in touch.

*Er hört sich einfach gern reden.* – He just likes to hear the sound of his own voice.

*Man höre und staune!* – Would you believe it? / Wonders will never cease.

*Wer nicht hören will, muss fühlen!* – If you don't do as you're told, you'll suffer for it.



r **Laut**, -e

ein kaum wahrnehmbarer Laut

r **Klang**, =e

Mir gefällt der Klang seiner Stimme.

**klängen** (klang, hat geklungen) / tönen  
*schweiz.*

Das Auto klingt wie ein Diesel.

r **Ton**, =e

Mir gefällt dein Ton nicht.

e **Lautstärke**

e **\*Nase**, -n

Er hat eine Nase für gute Geschäfte.

**\*riechen** (roch, hat gerochen)

sound

a scarcely audible sound

sound, tone

I like the sound of his voice.

to sound

The car sounds like a diesel.

tone

I don't like your tone (of voice).

volume

nose

He has a nose for profitable deals.

smell

Wonach riecht es hier? – Nach frisch  
gebackenem Kuchen.

r **Geruch**, =e

Ich liebe den Geruch von frisch  
gemahlenem Kaffee.

r **Duft**, =e

**duften**

Diese Rosen duften ja wunderbar!

\***atmen**

durch die Nase / den Mund einatmen ↔  
ausatmen

r **Atem**

r **Gestank**

\***stinken** (stank, hat gestunken)

What does it smell of here? –

Freshly baked cake.

smell

I love the smell of freshly ground  
coffee.

scent

to scent

These roses smell lovely / have a  
wonderful scent.

breathe

breathe in ↔ out through the  
nose / mouth

breath

stink

to stink, smell (bad)



English “aroma” is something we smell and find pleasant –  
in German: *Duft* or *Aroma*.

German *Aroma* can also be something we taste and find pleasant –  
in English: “flavour / taste”

*der Duft frisch gemahlene Kaffees* – the aroma of freshly ground coffee

*Diese Tomaten haben überhaupt kein Aroma / keinen Geschmack.* – These tomatoes  
have no flavour / taste at all.

r \***Geschmack**, =er

Die Geschmäcker sind verschieden.

Das hat einen bitteren Geschmack.

\***schmecken**

Das schmeckt \***süß** / **säzig** / \***sauer** /

\***bitter**.

taste, flavour

Tastes differ.

It has a bitter taste.

to taste

It tastes sweet / salty / sour / bitter.



The German word *Geschmack*, like English “taste”, also has the meanings:

1. Ability to distinguish what is nice from what is ugly, good from bad:

*Was Kleidung und Einrichtung betrifft, hat sie einen guten / sicheren Geschmack.* –  
In clothes and furnishing she has good taste / her taste is sure.

2. Personal preference for something:

*Das ist nicht jedermanns Geschmack.* – That is not to everyone’s taste.

The verb *schmecken* can, on its own, mean “taste good”:

*Mm, das schmeckt aber.* – Mm, this tastes good.

*Schmeckt es?* – Do you like it? / Is it OK?

s **Aroma**, -en

**aromatisch**

r \***Appetit**

Das hat mir den Appetit verdorben.

\***kosten** / \***probieren**

Kann ich mal probieren?

flavour, aroma

flavoursome, aromatic

appetite

It has spoiled my appetite.

to taste / try

Can I try (it)?



**berühren**e **Berührung**, -en

Der Stoff fühlt sich sehr weich an.

**\*anfassen** / angreifen *österreich.*

Please do not touch (the goods)!

**spüren**

Sie spürte den Schmerz nicht.

**\*träumen**

Ich habe letzte Nacht etwas Schreckliches geträumt. / Ich hatte letzte Nacht einen schrecklichen Traum.

r **\*Traum**, -e

to touch

touch

The material has a very soft touch.

handle, touch

(Die Waren) bitte nicht anfassen!

feel, sense

She didn't feel the pain.

to dream

I had a terrible dream last night.

dream

## Gefühle und Einstellungen

### Feelings and attitudes

s **\*Gefühl**, -e**\*fühlen**

Wie fühlen Sie sich in Ihrer neuen Wohnung?

Hier fühle ich mich richtig wohl!

Ich fühle mich noch ein bisschen fremd in Berlin.

Sie fühlte sich müde und deprimiert.

e **\*Stimmung**, -en

Die Stimmung beim Fußballspiel war super!

Es herrschte eine ausgelassene Stimmung.

e **\*Laune**, -n

guter ↔ schlechter Laune sein

Warum bist du heute so schlechter Laune?

**emotional****bewegend**

Die Geburt meines Kindes war der bewegendste Augenblick meines Lebens.

**zumute sein**

Mir ist zum Weinen zumute.

Mir ist jetzt nicht nach Spaß zumute.

s **Bedürfnis**, -se

Ich habe zur Zeit das Bedürfnis nach viel Ruhe.

e Zuneigung

**sich verlieben** (in +A)

Julia hat sich unsterblich verliebt!

feeling

feel

How do you feel in your new flat?

I feel really at home here.

I still feel a little bit of a stranger in Berlin.

She was feeling tired and depressed.

mood, atmosphere

The atmosphere at the football match was super.

There was a lively / boisterous atmosphere.

mood

be in a good ↔ bad mood

Why are you in such a bad mood today?

emotional

moving

The birth of my child was the most moving moment of my life.

feel like, be in the mood

I feel like crying.

I'm not in the mood for joking.

need, urge

I feel in need of a lot of peace and quiet at the moment.

affection

fall in love (*with*)

Julia has fallen madly in love.

e \***Liebe** Sg\***lieben**

Ich liebe ihn sehr.

Ich liebe es im Meer zu schwimmen.

Ich mache das nur aus Liebe zu ihm.

**anbeten**

Er betet seine neue Freundin an.

e **Leidenschaft**, -en**leidenschaftlich**s **Begehren****begehren**s **Verlangen** nache **Sehnsucht**, =e nach

Ich habe solche Sehnsucht nach dir.

sich **sehnen** nach

Sie sehnen sich nach Frieden.

\***gern haben**

Ich hab ihn sehr gern.

Was hätten Sie gern?

\***gern** (+ Verb)

Ich fahre gern mit dem Zug.

Ich bin sehr gern mit dir zusammen.

\***mögen** (mag, mochte, hat gemocht)

Ich mag keine Schokolade.

**genießen**

den Ausblick genießen

Ich genieße es, mit ihr zusammen zu sein.

love

to love

I love him very much.

I love swimming in the sea.

I'm only doing it out of love *for* him.

worship, adore

He adores his new girlfriend.

passion

passionate

desire

to desire

desire *for*longing / yearning *for*I have such a longing *for* you.long *for*

They long for peace.

like

I like him a lot.

What would you like?

like to (+ verb)

I like travelling by train.

I really enjoy being with you.

like

I don't like chocolate.

enjoy

enjoy the view

I enjoy being together with her.

**Other ways of expressing affection and liking***Sie war mir sofort sympathisch.* – I took to her straightaway.*Auf Schokolade ist er ganz versessen.* – He's crazy about chocolate.*Die Berge haben es mir angetan.* – The mountains really appeal to me.*Er genießt die Zuneigung aller.* – He enjoys everyone's affection / is liked by everyone.*Diese Aufgabe würde mich reizen.* – This task would really appeal to me.*Alte Bücher faszinieren mich.* – Old books fascinate me.*Sie schwärmt für Madonna.* – She's mad about Madonna.*Ich glaube, sie ist ihm wirklich zugetan.* – I think she's really taken with him.s \***Interesse**, -n

Mit großem Interesse habe ich Ihre

Stellenanzeige gelesen.

\***sich interessieren für**

Interessieren Sie sich auch für klassische

Musik?

\***interessant**

interest

I read your job advertisement with great interest.

be interested *in*

Are you interested in classical music, too?

interesting

Don't confuse *interessiert* with *interessant* and *sich interessieren für*!  
*Ich bin sehr interessiert an Ihrem Angebot.* – I'm very interested in your offer.  
*Das ist ein sehr interessantes Angebot.* – That's a very interesting offer.  
*Interessieren Sie sich für klassische Musik?* – Are you interested in classical music?



**\*lieber** (+ Verb)

Ich reise lieber mit dem Zug.

**\*vorziehen**

Ich ziehe es vor, hier zu bleiben.

**vertragen** (verträgt, vertrag, hat  
vertragen)

Er verträgt keine Kritik.

**ertragen** (erträgt, ertrug, hat ertragen) /  
**aushalten** (hält aus, hielt aus, hat  
ausgehalten)

Ich kann seine Arroganz nicht ertragen.

Ich halte diesen Lärm hier nicht mehr  
aus!

**tolerieren**

e **Toleranz**

**\*tolerant** ↔ **intolerant**

Sei doch nicht so intolerant!

jn etw **\*angehen**

Diese Sache geht mich nichts an.

Da halte ich mich raus.

sich **abfinden** mit (fand ab, hat  
abgefunden)

Ich kann mich nicht damit abfinden,  
dass ...

sich etw **\*bieten** / **\*gefallen lassen**  
(lässt, ließ, hat gelassen)

Das lasse ich mir nicht bieten / gefallen!

**nicht mögen** / **nicht leiden können**  
/ **nicht ausstehen können**

Ich kann ihn nicht leiden / nicht  
ausstehen.

e **Abneigung**, -en (gegen)

Ich empfinde eine große Abneigung  
gegen sie.

sich **\*ärgern** über +A

Worüber ärgerst du dich denn so?

**\*zornig**

Warum wirst du denn gleich so zornig? Er  
hat dir doch nichts getan!

**\*hassen**

prefer (+ verb)

I prefer travelling by train.

prefer

I prefer to stay here.

bear, stand

He can't bear being criticized.

bear, stand, endure

I can't stand his arrogance.

I can't endure this noise one  
moment longer.

tolerate

tolerance

tolerant ↔ intolerant

Don't be so intolerant!

to concern sb

That's none of my business. I'm  
going to stay out of this.

come to terms with

I can't come to terms with the fact  
that ...

put up with, stand for

That's something I won't put up  
with!

dislike / not be able to stand

I dislike him. / I can't stand him.

aversion (to)

I have a great aversion to her.

be / get annoyed / angry about

What are you so annoyed about?  
angry, furious

There's no reason to get so angry.  
He hasn't done anything to you.

hate

Ich hasse es, wenn ich mich so abhetzen  
muss.

r **Hass** Sg

Ihre Augen waren voller Hass.

I hate having to rush.

hatred, hate

Her eyes were full of hate.



### Verbs expressing strong dislike

*Sie verabscheut ihn.*

*Sie kann ihn nicht ausstehen.*

*Ich verabscheue Gewalttätigkeit.*

*Sie verachtet ihn.*

She detests / loathes him.

She can't stand him.

I abhor violence.

She despises him.

r **Optimismus** ↔ r **Pessimismus**

**optimistisch** ↔ **pessimistisch**

**\*hoffen**

Wird er uns helfen? – Ich hoffe es.

e **\*Hoffnung**

Man darf nie die Hoffnung aufgeben.

e **Befürchtung**

befürchten

Ich befürchte, er kommt nicht mehr.

**verzweifeln**

Er sah sie verzweifelt an.

e **Verzweiflung**

Ihr stand die Verzweiflung ins Gesicht  
geschrieben.

s **\*Vorurteil**, -e

Vorurteile gegen Ausländer

**subjektiv** ↔ **objektiv**

optimism ↔ pessimism

optimistic ↔ pessimistic

to hope

Will he help us? – I hope so.

hope

You should never give up hope.

fear

to fear

I'm afraid that he's not coming.

to despair

He looked at her in despair.

despair, desperation

The desperation was written all  
over her face.

prejudice

prejudice against foreigners

subjective ↔ objective

### Adjectives expressing annoyance

*Sie war \*böse / \*ärgerlich / verärgert, weil er sie wie immer warten ließ. –*

*She was angry / cross / annoyed because he was keeping her waiting again.*

*Der Chef war \*wütend. – The boss was furious / livid.*

e **\*Angst**, =e

**\*Angst haben** (vor +D)

Hast du Angst vor Hunden?

**\*ängstlich**

**\*erschrecken** (erschrickt, erschrak, ist  
erschrocken) / schrecken *österr.*

jn **\*erschrecken**

sich **\*fürchten** (vor +D)

e **Furcht**

Sie fürchtet sich vor dem Fliegen.

**vorsichtig** (sein)

e **\*Vorsicht**

**\*stolz sein** (ist, war, ist gewesen) (auf +A)

fear, anxiety

be afraid of

Are you afraid of dogs?

anxious

get a fright

to scare sb, give sb a scare

be afraid of

fear

She's afraid of flying.

(be) careful, cautious

care, caution

be proud of



Auf diese Leistung sind wir stolz.

**eifersüchtig sein** (auf +A)

Bist du eifersüchtig auf ihn?

e **Eifersucht**

**beneiden**

Ich beneide dich um diesen Job.

\***überraschen**

Ich bin überrascht dich hier zu sehen.

e **Überraschung**, -en

Was für eine Überraschung!

(sich) \***wundern**

**erstaunt**

Wir waren ganz erstaunt / verblüfft, sie hier zu sehen.

\***weinen**

\***schreien** (schrie, hat geschrien)

Hör doch, das Baby schreit.

\***lachen**

Was gibt es da zu lachen?

s **Gelächter**

We're proud of this achievement.

be jealous of

Are you jealous of him?

jealousy

to envy

I (don't) envy you this job.

surprise

I'm surprised to see you here.

surprise

What a surprise!

to wonder

astonished, amazed

We were quite astonished / amazed to see her here.

to cry (= weep)

to cry (= shout)

Listen, the baby's crying.

to laugh

What is there to laugh about?

laughter

### Verbs expressing smiling and laughter

\**lächeln*

smile

*grinsen*

grin

*schallend lachen*

guffaw

\**lachen*

laugh

*kichern*

giggle

e **Einstellung**, -en

eine positive ↔ negative Einstellung gegenüber etw./jm haben

e **Haltung**, -en

Ihre ablehnende Haltung gegenüber unserem Vorschlag hat mich überrascht.

attitude

have a positive ↔ negative attitude to sb / sth

attitude

Their opposition to our suggestion surprised me.



## Ethik und Moral Ethics and morality

e **Moral**

Das ist eine Frage der Moral.

Meiner Meinung nach hat er seltsame Moralvorstellungen.

**moralisch** ↔ **unmoralisch**

moralische Prinzipien / Maßstäbe

Er fühlte sich moralisch verpflichtet, ihr zu helfen.

unmoralisches Verhalten

morality, morals

That's a question of morals.

In my opinion he has some strange ideas of morality.

moral ↔ immoral

moral principles / standards

He feels under a moral obligation to help her.

unethical / immoral behaviour



## Expressions to do with morals and morality

Vater hat heute seinen Moralischen! –

Dad is down in the dumps / is having a fit of remorse today.

Seine dauernden Moralpredigten gehen mir langsam auf die Nerven. –

His constant (moralizing) lectures are starting to get on my nerves.

Du mit deiner Doppelmoral! – You and your double standards.

### ethisch

#### e Ethik

\***gut** (besser, best-) ↔ \***schlecht**

das **Gute** ↔ das **Schlechte**

Sie glaubt immer an das Gute im Menschen.

Gutes tun

eine gute Tat ↔ eine schlechte / böse Tat

#### **gutmütig**

Opa ist ein sehr gutmütiger Mensch.

\***menschlich** sein

\***richtig** ↔ \***falsch**

Da hast du richtig gehandelt.

s \***Recht** ↔ s **Unrecht**

im Recht ↔ Unrecht sein

Ich weiß, dass ich im Unrecht war.

\***böse**

#### das Böse

der Konflikt zwischen Gut und Böse

e **Sünde**, -n

Es wäre eine Sünde, das zu tun.

s **Gewissen**

ein ruhiges / gutes / schlechtes Gewissen haben

Gewissensbisse haben

#### **gewissenhaft**

Er hat alle Arbeiten gewissenhaft erledigt.

s **Ideal**, -e

Er lebt entsprechend seinen Idealen.

#### **idealistisch**

e **Tugend**, -en ↔ s **Laster**, -

Rauchen ist sein größtes Laster.

e **Weisheit**

e **Tapferkeit**

e \***Schuld**

\***schuldig** ↔ \***unschuldig**

Es ist alles ihre Schuld.

e **Integrität**

Er ist ein integrier Mensch.

e **Gerechtigkeit** Sg

ethical

ethics

good (better, best) ↔ bad

the good ↔ the bad

She always believes in the good in human beings.

do good

a good deed ↔ a bad / an evil deed

good-natured

Grandad is a very good-natured person.

be human

right ↔ wrong

You've done the right thing.

right ↔ wrong

be in the right ↔ be in the wrong

I know I was in the wrong.

evil

the evil

the conflict between good and evil sin

It would be a sin to do that.

conscience

have a clear / good / bad

conscience

have pangs of conscience

conscientious

He was always conscientious.

ideal

He lives according to his ideals.

idealistic

virtue ↔ vice

Smoking is his biggest vice.

wisdom

bravery

fault, blame, guilt

guilty ↔ innocent

It's all her fault.

integrity

He's a man of integrity.

justice

**gerecht** ↔ **ungerecht**

für eine gerechte Sache kämpfen

e **Ehrlichkeit****\*ehrllich** ↔ **\*unehrllich**

Ehrlich währt am längsten.

r **Gehorsam** ↔ r **Ungehorsam**

Sie ist ein gehorsames Kind.

just ↔ unjust

fight in a just cause

honesty

honest ↔ dishonest

Honesty is the best policy.

obedience ↔ disobedience

She is an obedient child.

**The seven virtues**r **Glaube**

faith

e **\*Liebe**

charity

e **Tapferkeit**

bravery

e **Mäßigkeit**

moderation

e **\*Höpfung**

hope

e **Gerechtigkeit**

righteousness

e **Klugheit**

wisdom

**The seven deadly sins**r **Hochmut**

vanity

r **Neid**

envy

e **Unmäßigkeit**

immoderation

e **Trägheit**

lethargy

r **\*Zorn**

anger

e **Unkeuschheit**

unchastity

r **Geiz**

miserliness

e **Anständigkeit****anständig** ↔ **unanständig**

Sicherlich ist er ein anständiger Kerl.

Du sollst keine unanständigen Wörter benutzen.

e **Treue**

Er schwor ihr ewige Treue.

**\*treu** ↔ **\*untreu****schwören** (schwor, hat geschworen)**\*versprechen** (verspricht, versprach, hat versprochen)Er hat mir versprochen, sich nicht mehr zu **\*verspäten**.**vertrauenswürdig**

Ist sie ein vertrauenswürdiger Mensch?

e **Gier** / e **Habsucht**seine **Geldgier** / **Machtgier****gierig** / **habsüchtig** seine **Korruption** / e **Bestechung****korrupt** / **bestechlich** sein

Glauben Sie, dass er korrupt ist?

e **Scheinheiligkeit** / e **Heuchelei****scheinheilig** / **heuchlerisch**

Sei nicht immer so scheinheilig!

**\*lügen** (log, hat gelogen)e **\*Lüge**, -n

decency

decent ↔ indecent

I'm sure he's a decent guy.

You're not to use any rude words.

faithfulness, loyalty

He swore her eternal faithfulness.

faithful ↔ unfaithful

swear

to promise

He promised me not to be late in future.

trustworthy

Is she a trustworthy person?

greed

his avarice / craving for power

be greedy

corruption / bribery

be corrupt / open to bribery

Do you think he's corrupt?

hypocrisy

hypocritical

Don't be so hypocritical / such a hypocrite.

to lie

lie

r **Lügner**, - // e **Lügnerin**, -nen  
Er ist ein verdammter Lügner.  
r **Nichtsnutz**, -e  
r **Gauner**, -  
Der alte Gauner hat mich betrogen.  
r **Skrupel**, -  
Sie hatte nicht die leisesten Skrupel.

### skrupellos

r \***Fehler**, -  
Jeder macht mal Fehler.  
sich **schämen** (für)  
e **Scham**  
Ich bin **beschämt**.  
Du solltest dich schämen.

### e **Reue**

#### berueen

Der Angeklagte hat die Tat bereut.

### reumütig

jm etw **peinlich** sein (ist, war, ist  
gewesen)  
Das braucht dir nicht peinlich zu sein.  
**obszön** / **unzüchtig**  
Er reißt immer obszöne Witze.

liar  
He's a bloody liar.  
good-for-nothing  
crook, rogue  
The old rogue tricked me.  
scruple  
She didn't have the slightest  
scruples.  
unscrupulous  
fault  
Everyone makes mistakes.  
be ashamed (of)  
shame  
I am ashamed.  
You should be ashamed of  
yourself.  
remorse  
regret, be sorry for  
The accused was sorry for what he  
did.  
repentant  
be embarrassed / feel bad / feel  
awkward about sth  
It's nothing to be ashamed of.  
obscene  
He's always making obscene jokes.

## Persönliche Beziehungen Human relations

### e \***Beziehung**, -en

ihre Beziehung zu Männern  
Ich habe eine sehr gute Beziehung zu / mit  
meinen Nachbarn.  
seine Beziehungen spielen lassen  
sich mit jm **gutstellen**  
**zurechtkommen** (kam zurecht, ist  
zurechtgekommen) / **auskommen** mit  
(kam aus, ist ausgekommen)  
Ich komme gut mit ihm zurecht / aus.  
Wir kommen gut miteinander aus.  
sich \***verstehen** (verstand, hat  
verstanden)  
Wir verstehen uns sehr gut.  
**gegenseitig**

relationship  
her relationship *with* men  
I'm on very good terms *with* my  
neighbours.  
pull strings  
try to get on good terms with sb  
get along with  
  
I get along with him.  
We get along well.  
get on  
  
We get on very well together.  
mutual(ly)



sich **\*unterstützen**  
Sie unterstützen sich sehr.

e **\*Freundschaft**, -en  
r **\*Freund**, -e // e **Freundin**, -nen

support each other  
They give each other lots of mutual support.  
friendship  
(male) friend // (female) friend, girlfriend

### Expressions to do with friends and friendship

eine enge / \*herzliche Freundschaft  
freundschaftliche Beziehungen  
Freundschaft \*schließen mit jm  
r Freundschaftsbeweis, -e  
jm einen Freundschaftsdienst erweisen  
Ich sage Ihnen das in aller Freundschaft.  
Freundschaften \*pflegen  
Freunde \*finden  
Freunde \*verlieren  
ein alter Schulfreund / Studienfreund von mir //  
eine alte Schulfreundin / Studienfreundin  
von mir  
Wir sind dicke Freunde // Freundinnen.  
Er hat seit kurzem eine feste Freundin.

a close / warm friendship  
friendly relations  
make friends with sb  
proof / gesture of friendship  
do sb a favour out of friendship  
I'm telling you this as a friend.  
cultivate friendships  
make friends  
lose friends  
an old schoolfriend of mine, an old friend from my student days  
We're close / great friends.  
He's recently found a steady girlfriend.



r/e **\*Bekannte**, -n  
Sie ist eine gute Bekannte von mir.  
e **Bekanntschaft**, -en  
**\*bekannt** (sein)  
jm/sich **\*begegnen**  
Wo sind wir uns schon einmal begegnet?  
**\*kennen lernen**  
Ich habe sie in London kennen gelernt.  
Allmählich lernte sie ihn besser kennen.

**vertraut** (sein)  
Wir sind uns sehr vertraut.  
jm **nahe stehen** (stand, hat / ist gestanden)  
Wir standen uns immer sehr nahe.  
r **\*Nachbar**, -n // e **Nachbarin**, -nen  
Trinken wir auf eine gute Nachbarschaft!

e **Gleichgültigkeit**  
s **Mitgefühl**  
Ich möchte Ihnen mein tiefes Mitgefühl ausdrücken.  
s **Mitleid**

acquaintance  
She is a friend of mine.  
acquaintance  
(be) acquainted  
to meet  
Where have we met before?  
get to know  
I got to know her in London.  
She gradually got to know him better.  
(be) close, (be) intimate  
We are very close.  
be close to sb  
We were always very close.  
neighbour  
Let's drink to being good neighbours.  
indifference  
sympathy  
I would like to express my deep sympathy.  
sympathy

Mitleid haben mit jm  
Sie verdienen kein Mitleid.

e **Solidarität**  
**solidarisch sein** (mit)

r **\*Rat** / r **\*Ratschlag**, =e  
Eine gute Freundin weiß fast immer  
einen Rat.

e **Zuneigung**

e **\*Liebe**

**\*lieben**

verliebt sein in jn

Sie ist in ihn verliebt.

**nicht ausstehen** / **leiden können**

Ich kann ihn nicht ausstehen / leiden!

r **Hass**

**\*hassen**

Ich hasse den Winter.

feel sorry *for* sb  
They deserve no pity.

solidarity  
show / declare one's solidarity  
(with)

(piece of) advice  
A good friend almost always  
knows what to do.

affection

love

to love

be in love *with* sb

She's in love with him.

not be able to stand

I can't stand him.

hatred

hate

I hate the winter.



### People who have something in common or do something together

r **Spielkamerad**, en // e **Spielkameradin**, -nen

r **Schulkamerad**, -en // e **Schulkameradin**, -nen

r **Studienkollege**, -n // e **Studienkollegin**, -nen

r **Mitbürger**, - // e **Mitbürgerin**, -nen

r/e **Mitreisende**, -n

r **Kumpel**, -

r **\*Kollege**, -n // e **Kollegin**, -nen

r **Komplize**, -en // e **Komplizin**, -nen

r **\*Teilnehmer**, - // e **\*Teilnehmerin**, -nen

r **\*Partner**, - // e **Partnerin**, -nen

playmate

schoolmate

fellow student

fellow citizen

fellow passenger

mate

colleague

accomplice

participant

partner

e **\*Gruppe**, -n

alle Mitglieder der Gruppe

Gruppendruck ausüben auf jn

e **\*Familie**, -n

r **Klub**, -s

r **\*Verein**, -e

einem Verein beitreten ↔ aus einem

Verein austreten

s **\*Mitglied**, -er

e **Mitgliedschaft** in einem Verein / Klub

e **\*Gesellschaft**, -en

Sie leistet ihm Gesellschaft.

Er sehnt sich nach Gesellschaft.

e **\*Gemeinschaft**, -en

**\*gemeinsam**

group

all the members of the group

exert group pressure on sb

family

club

club

join ↔ leave a club

member

membership of a club

company

She keeps him company.

He's longing for companionship.

community

common, mutual, joint,  
together, jointly

e <b>*Hilfe</b> , -n	help, aid
Sie hat ein bisschen Hilfe nötig.	She needs a little bit of help.
jm <b>*helfen</b> (hilft, half, hat geholfen)	to help sb
e <b>Unterstützung</b>	support
moralische / finanzielle Unterstützung	moral / financial support
<b>*unterstützen</b>	to support
e <b>Zusammenarbeit</b>	cooperation
e <b>*Gruppe</b> , -n / s <b>*Team</b> , -s [ti:m]	group / team
Wir haben das in Teamwork gemacht.	It was teamwork.
r <b>*Kontakt</b> , -e	contact
Wir müssen in Kontakt bleiben.	We must keep in touch.
Wir haben den Kontakt zu ihr verloren.	We've lost touch <i>with</i> her.
e <b>*Verbindung</b> , -en	connection, link
Sie hat gute Verbindungen.	She has good connections.
<b>in Verbindung stehen mit</b> (stand, hat / ist gestanden)	be in touch with
sich <b>in Verbindung setzen</b> mit	get in touch with
Er setzte sich mit ihr in Verbindung.	He got in touch with her.
sich <b>*unterhalten</b> mit (jm) / über +A	talk to (sb) / about sth
(unterhält, unterhielt, hat unterhalten)	
Wir müssen uns mit ihm darüber unterhalten.	We've got to talk to him about it.
s <b>*Gespräch</b> , -e	conversation
r <b>Dialog</b> , -e	dialogue
einen <b>Dialog führen</b> mit	enter into a dialogue with
den Dialog nicht abbrechen lassen	not let the dialogue be interrupted / broken off
e <b>*Diskussion</b> , -en	discussion
Darüber gab es lange Diskussionen.	There was much discussion about this.
e <b>Spannung</b> , -en	tension
Es gibt leichte Spannungen innerhalb der Gruppe.	Relations within the group are somewhat strained.
r <b>Konflikt</b> , -e	conflict
einen <b>Konflikt austragen</b> (trägt aus, trug aus, hat ausgetragen)	carry on a conflict
einen <b>Konflikt *lösen</b>	resolve a conflict
e <b>Meinungsverschiedenheit</b> , -en	difference of opinion
Wir hatten eine kleine Meinungsverschiedenheit.	We had a slight difference of opinion.
e <b>Auseinandersetzung</b> , -en	argument, dispute
Sie hatten oft Auseinandersetzungen.	They often clashed.
r <b>*Streit</b> , -s	quarrel
sich <b>*streiten</b> (stritt, hat gestritten)	to argue, to quarrel
Sie haben sich oft gestritten.	They often quarrelled.
Darüber lässt sich streiten.	That's debatable. / That's open to argument.
e <b>Uneinigkeit</b>	disaccord, disagreement

sich **nicht \*einig** / sich **\*uneinig sein**  
(ist, war, ist gewesen)

Wir sind uns darüber noch nicht einig.

e **Feindseligkeit**, -en (gegenüber jm)

**feindselig**

r **\*Feind**, -e // e **Feindin**, -nen

Sie hat sich dort viele Feinde gemacht.

r **Gegner**, - // e **Gegnerin**, -nen

Mach ihn dir nicht zum Gegner!

e **Sympathie** [zym'pa'ti:] (für) ↔

e **Antipathie** / e **Abneigung** (gegen)

r **Vorwurf**, =e

jm Vorwürfe machen

jm etwas **vorwerfen** (wirft vor, warf vor,  
hat vorgeworfen)

e **Beleidigung**, -en

**\*beleidigen**

Warum bist du denn so beleidigt?

e **Kränkung**, -en

**kränken** / **\*verletzen**

Seine Äußerung hat mich sehr gekränkt.

sich **gekränkt fühlen**

jm etw **übel nehmen** (nimmt, nahm,  
hat genommen)

Das habe ich ihr sehr übel genommen.

e **Rache**

**sich rächen** (an +D)

**verächteln**

e **Verächtung**

Das gibt noch „böses Blut“.

We are in disagreement.

We haven't reached agreement on  
that yet.

animosity (towards sb)

hostile

enemy

She made a lot of enemies there.

opponent

Don't make an enemy of him.

liking, affection, fondness ↔

antipathy (to / towards)

reproach

to reproach sb

to reproach sb for sth

insult

to insult

Why are you so offended?

injury (to sb's feelings)

hurt / injure (feelings), offend

What he said really hurt my  
feelings.

feel hurt

hold sth against sb

I've not forgotten that. / I really

hold that against her.

revenge

take revenge, avenge oneself

despise

contempt

That's going to cause bad

blood / ill feeling.



### A few terms of abuse

*Du Trottel / Idiot / Depp / Esel!*

*So ein Idiot!*

*Du bist wohl verrückt?*

*Du hast doch einen Knall!*

You fool / idiot / twit / ass.

What an idiot!

You must be mad / crazy!

You're barmy / off your rocker.

e **\*Entschuldigung**, -en

sich **\*entschuldigen** (für)

**\*verzeihen** (verzieh, hat verziehen) /

**vergeben** (vergibt, vergab, hat vergeben)

Können Sie ihr denn das nicht verzeihen?

e **\*Verzeihung**

Oh, Verzeihung! Das tut mir Leid!

apology

apologize

forgive, excuse

Can't you forgive her (for it)?

forgiveness

Oh, I'm terribly sorry.

# Sexualität

## Sexuality

s <b>Geschlecht</b> , -er	sex
das andere Geschlecht	the <i>opposite</i> sex
* <b>männlich</b> ↔ * <b>weiblich</b>	male ↔ female
e <b>Zärtlichkeit</b> , -en	tenderness, affection, caress
<b>zärtlich sein</b> (ist, war, ist gewesen)	be affectionate
jn <b>verführen</b>	seduce sb
<b>erotisch</b>	erotic
e <b>Erotik</b>	eroticism
r <b>Sex</b>	sex
Sex haben (mit)	have sex (with)
e <b>Sexualität</b>	sexuality
e Sexualerziehung	sex education
s Sexualverbrechen, -	sex crime
<b>sexuell</b>	sexual
e sexuelle Belästigung	sexual harassment
<b>heterosexuell</b>	heterosexual
<b>homosexuell</b>	homosexual
e Homosexualität	homosexuality
* <b>schwul</b>	gay
r <b>Schwule</b> , -n	gay
<b>lesbisch</b>	lesbian
e <b>Lesbierin</b> , -nen / e <b>Lesbe</b> , -n	lesbian
e <b>Empfangnisverhütung</b>	contraception
s * <b>Kondom</b> , -e / s Präservativ, -e	<i>condom</i>
e * <b>Pille</b> Sg	pill
e Spirale, -n	coil
e <b>Schwangerschaft</b> , -en	pregnancy
* <b>schwanger sein</b>	be pregnant
Sie ist zum zweiten Mal schwanger.	She's expecting again / her second.
r <b>Schwangerschaftsabbruch</b> , =e /	abortion
e <b>Abtreibung</b> , -en	
<b>abtreiben lassen</b>	have an abortion
eine Abtreibung vornehmen lassen	undergo an abortion
e <b>Prostitution</b>	prostitution
e <b>Prostituierte</b> , -n / e <b>Hure</b> , -n	prostitute / whore
r <b>Stricher</b> , - / r <b>Strichjunge</b> , -n	rent boy
e <b>Vergewaltigung</b> , -en	rape
jn <b>vergewaltigen</b>	rape sb
sexueller <b>Mjssbrauch</b>	sexual abuse
e Geschlechtskrankheit, -en	veneral disease (VD)
* <b>Aids</b> / s/r HIV-Virus	AIDS / human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)

## Leben und Tod Life and Death

r \***Tod** / r **Todesfall**, =e

Es gab einige Todesfälle.

\***sterben** (stirbt, starb, ist gestorben)

Er sagte mir das auf dem Sterbebett.

Woran ist sie gestorben? – An Krebs / Altersschwäche.

Sie starb eines natürlichen Todes.

r / e **Sterbende**, -n

r / e **Verstorbene**, -n

Sie ist heute morgen verstorben.

\***lebendig** ↔ \***tot**

\***tödlich**

eine tödliche Verletzung

r / e **Tote**, -n

r Totenschein, -e

e **Obduktion**, -en / e **Autopsie**, -n

eine Obduktion durchführen

r **Sarg**, =e / e **Urne**, -n

**begraben** / **beerdigen**

Wo liegt sie begraben?

r **Friedhof**, =e

s **Begräbnis**, -se / e **Beerdigung**, -en / e **Beisetzung**, -en

Ich war auf ihrer Beerdigung.

s **Bestattungsinstitut**, -e

e **Trauerfeier**, -n

e **Totenmesse**, -n

s **Krematorium**, Krematorien

s **Grab**, =er

am Grab einen Kranz niederlegen

r **Grabstein**, -e

Ruhe in Frieden (*Grabinschrift*)

von der Wiege bis zur Bahre *idiom.*

s **Beileid**

Herzliches Beileid!

death

There were a number of deaths.

die

He told me that on his deathbed.

What did he die *of*? – Of cancer / old age.

She died a natural death.

person dying

the deceased

She died this morning.

alive ↔ dead

fatal, lethal

a fatal injury

dead person

death certificate

postmortem / autopsy

perform a postmortem (examination)

coffin / urn

bury

Where is she buried?

cemetery, graveyard

funeral / burial / interment

I was *at* her funeral.

funeral home

funeral service

requiem mass

crematorium

grave

lay a wreath on the grave

gravestone, tombstone

rest in peace (epitaph)

from the cradle to the grave

condolence(s)

(please accept) my sincere condolences / my heartfelt sympathy



### From the burial service

*Wir haben nichts in die Welt gebracht und wir bringen nichts hinaus. Der Herr gibt, der Herr nimmt; der Name des Herrn sei gelobt.*

We brought nothing into this world, and it is certain we can carry nothing out.

The Lord gives and the Lord takes away, blessed be the name of the Lord.  
*Erde zu Erde, Asche zu Asche, Staub zu Staub.*  
 Earth to earth, ashes to ashes, dust to dust.

e <b>Seele</b> , -n	soul
s Leben nach dem Tod	afterlife
die <b>Hinterbliebenen</b> Pl	the bereaved
(be) <b>trauern</b>	mourn
Tausende trauerten um sie.	Thousands mourned for her.
e <b>Trauer</b>	mourning
Sie ist immer noch in Trauer.	She's still in mourning.
r <b>Nachruf</b>	obituary
e <b>Todesanzeige</b> , -n	death notice
e <b>Euthanasie</b> / e <b>Stęrbhilfe</b>	euthanasia
r <b>Selbstmord</b>	suicide
e Selbstmordrate, -n	suicide rate
Sie beging Selbstmord.	She committed suicide.
<b>umkommen</b> (kam um, ist umgekommen)	be killed
Bei dem Absturz kamen 96 Menschen ums Leben.	96 people were killed in the crash.
jn <b>umbringen</b> (brachte um, hat umgebracht)	kill sb / do away with sb
s <b>Testament</b> , -e	will
r letzte Wille	last will and testament
sein letzter Wille	his last will and testament
<b>erben</b> ↔ <b>vererben</b>	inherit ↔ bequeath, bequest
s <b>Erbe</b>	inheritance, legacy
Das Erbe muss * <b>gleichmäőig</b> unter den Geschwistern verteilt werden.	The inheritance is to be divided equally among the brothers and sisters.
r <b>Erbe</b> , -n // e <b>Erbin</b> , -nen	heir // heiress
r <b>Nachkomme</b> , -n	descendant, offspring

**3.1 Verwandtschaft**  
**Family relations**

**3.2 Partnerschaft**  
**Partnership**

**3.3 Kinder**  
**Children**

# 3

**Die Familie**  
**The Family**



# Verwandtschaft

## Family relations

e \***Famili**e, -n

Meine Familie lebt seit zwei Generationen hier.

e **Verw**andtschaft

r/e \***Verw**andte, -n

Haben Sie Verwandte in Deutschland?

Sie ist nicht mit mir \***verw**andt.

r/e \***Ang**ehörige, -n

Sind die Angehörigen benachrichtigt worden?

r **St**ammbaum, =e

r **V**orfahr, -en

Meine Vorfahren kommen aus Polen.

e **A**bstammung / e **H**erkunft

Sie sind polnischer Abstammung.

In den USA leben Menschen verschiedenster Herkunft.

**E**ltern Pl

r \***V**ater, = // e \***M**utter, =

s \***K**ind, -er

Meine Kinder sind schon aus dem Haus.

Eltern sorgen für Ihre Kinder.

\***s**orgen (für)

r \***S**ohn, =e // e \***T**ochter, =

r \***B**ruder, = // e \***S**chwester, -n

r Halbbruder, = //

e Halbschwester, -n

**G**eschwister Pl

*Stief*eltern / *Stief*vater / *Stief*mutter

*Stief*kinder / *Stief*sohn / *Stief*tochter

*Stief*geschwister / *Stief*bruder / *Stief*schwester

\**Schw*iegereltern / \**Schw*iegervater /

\**Schw*iegermutter

\**Schw*iegersohn / \**Schw*iegertochter

r **S**chwager, - //

e **S**chwägerin, -nen

family

My family has been living here for two generations.

relations

relation, relative

Do you have any relatives in Germany?

She's no relation of mine.

relative, relation

Have the next of kin been informed?

family tree

ancestor

My ancestors are from Poland.

descent / origins

They are of Polish descent / extraction.

In the USA there live people of the most varied origins.

parents

father // mother

child

My children have already left home.

Parents take care of their children.

take care (of)

son // daughter

brother // sister

half-brother // half-sister

brothers and sisters

stepparents / stepfather / stepmother

stepchildren / stepson / stepdaughter

stepbrothers and -sisters / stepbrother / stepsister

parents-in-law / father-in-law / mother-in-law

son-in-law / daughter-in-law

brother-in-law // sister-in-law



r \***Onkel**, -s // e \***Tante**, -n  
 r Großonkel, - // e Großtante, -n  
 r \***Neffe**, -n // e \***Nichte**, -n  
 r \***Cousin**, -s [ku'zɛ:] //  
 e \***Cousine**, -n [ku'zi:nə]  
 r **Vetter**, -n  
 Brigitte ist eine Cousine von mir.  
**Großeltern** Pl  
 r **Großvater**, - //  
 e **Großmutter**, -  
 r Urgroßvater // e Urgroßmutter  
 Urgroßeltern Pl

uncle // aunt  
 great-uncle // great-aunt  
 nephew // niece  
 cousin  
 cousin  
 Brenda is a cousin of mine.  
 grandparents  
 grandfather // grandmother  
 great-grandfather //  
 great-grandmother  
 great-grandparents

*Mama* (auch [ma'ma:]) / *Mami* / *Mutti*  
*Papa* / *Papi* / *Vati*  
*Oma* / *Omi*  
*Opa* / *Opi*

mum(my)  
 dad(dy)  
 gran(ny)  
 grandad / grandpa



r \***Enkel**, - // e **Enkelin**, -nen  
 e **Enkelkinder** Pl  
 r Urenkel // e Urenkelin  
 Urenkel Pl

grandson // granddaughter  
 grandchildren  
 great-grandson //  
 great-granddaughter  
 great-grandchildren

## Partnerschaft Partnership

s \***Paar**, -e  
 Seit wann sind Linda und Franz ein Paar?

### zusammenleben

Ralf und Sabine sind nicht verheiratet,  
 aber sie leben schon seit fünf Jahren  
 zusammen.

die eheähnliche Lebensgemeinschaft

r **Lebensgefährte**, -n //  
 e **Lebensgefährtin**, -nen /  
 r **Lebenspartner**, - //  
 e **Lebenspartnerin**, -nen

\***sich verlieben** (in +A)

\***verliebt sein** (in +A)

Bist du in ihn verliebt?

\***Liebling**, -e

r **Flirt**, -s [flɔɐt]

couple  
 How long have Linda and Franz  
 been together?  
 live together  
 Ralf and Sabine are not married,  
 but they have been living  
 together for five years.  
 long-term relationship  
 partner

fall in love (with)

be in love (with)

Are you in love with him?

darling

flirt

**fürten** [ˈflœrtŋ]

**sich verloben**

**verlobt sein** (mit)

e **Verlobung**, -en

Die Verlobung fand im engsten

Familienkreis statt.

r/e **Verlobte**, -n

r **Heiratsantrag**, =e

Peter hat mir einen Heiratsantrag  
gemacht.

e **\*Ehe**, -n

Sie hat eine Tochter aus erster Ehe.

e **Heirat**

**\*heiraten**

Wir haben 1998 geheiratet.

Mein Sohn heiratet nächsten Sommer.

Ich würde ihn nie heiraten!

**\*verheiratet sein** (mit)

Sie ist mit einem Künstler verheiratet.

to flirt

get engaged

be engaged (*to*)

engagement

Only the immediate family were

present when the engagement  
was announced.

fiancé, fiancée

proposal of marriage

Peter has proposed to me.

marriage

She has a daughter by a previous  
marriage.

marriage

marry

We got married in 1998.

My son is getting married next  
summer.

I would never marry him!

be married (*to*)

She's married to an artist.



### Action

*Peter hat sich verliebt.*

Peter has fallen in love.

*Peter und Katja haben sich  
an Silvester verlobt.*

Peter and Katja got engaged on  
New Year's Eve.

*Peter und Katja heiraten im  
Juli.*

Peter and Katja are getting  
married in July.

*Peter und Katja haben sich  
getrennt.*

Peter and Katja have separated.

*Peter und Katja haben sich  
scheiden lassen.*

Peter and Katja have divorced.

### State

*Peter ist verliebt.*

Peter is in love.

*Peter und Katja sind seit Silvester  
verlobt.*

Peter and Katja have been engaged  
since New Year's Eve.

*Peter und Katja sind seit Juli  
verheiratet.*

Peter and Katja have been married  
since July.

*Peter und Katja sind/leben seit einem  
Jahr getrennt.*

Peter and Katja have been  
separated for a year.

*Peter und Katja sind endlich  
geschieden.*

Peter and Katja are divorced at last.

e **\*Hochzeit**, -en / e **Trauung**, -en

Frau Berger und Herr Dr. Rein geben ihre  
**Vermählung** bekannt.

wedding / marriage

Ms Berger and Doctor Rein are  
pleased to announce their  
marriage.

s **Standesamt**, =er  
e standesamtliche / kirchliche Trauung  
Am Freitag heiraten wir standesamtlich  
und am Samstag kirchlich.

Die Trauung fand in der Kirche statt.  
r **Pölderabend**, -e

registry office  
registry-office / church wedding  
We are getting married at the  
registry office on Friday, with the  
church ceremony on Saturday.  
The marriage took place in church.  
pre-wedding party

The law in Germany obliges couples to get married at the **Standesamt** (registry office), so those who want a church wedding have this as a second ceremony. A party is traditionally held on the evening before the wedding day for relatives and friends of both bride and groom, the **Pölderabend**. Sometimes old crockery is smashed to bring good luck. Homosexual (registry office) marriages were legalized in 2001.



s **Aufgebot**, -e  
r **Bräutigam**, -e // e **Braut**, =e  
s **Brautpaar**, -e  
s **Ehepaar**, -e  
e **Heiratsurkunde**, -n  
r **Trauzeuge**, -n //  
e **Trauzeugin**, -nen  
mein \***Mann** // meine \***Frau**  
mein Gatte / Ehemann // meine Gattin /  
Ehefrau (*förmlich*)

r **Ehering**, -e  
s **Hochzeitskleid**, -er  
r **Brautstrauß**, =e  
e **Hochzeitsreise**, -n /  
**Flitterwochen** Pl

Wohin fahren Sie auf Hochzeitsreise?

In den Flitterwochen fliegen wir nach  
Jamaica.

r **Hochzeitstag**  
Morgen feiern wir unseren ersten  
Hochzeitstag.

e **silberne / goldene Hochzeit**  
Meine Großeltern feiern nächstes Jahr  
ihre goldene Hochzeit.

r **Junggeselle**, -n  
Er ist ein überzeugter Junggeselle.  
**eheliche** ↔ **uneheliche** Kinder  
e **Gleichberechtigung**

\***gleichberechtigt**  
jm \***treu** ↔ **untreu sein**  
Ich war ihr nie untreu.

s \***Verhältnis**, -se / e **Affäre**, -n

banns  
bridegroom // bride  
bridal couple  
married couple  
marriage certificate  
witness (at wedding ceremony)

my husband // wife  
my husband // wife (formal)

wedding ring  
wedding dress  
wedding bouquet  
honeymoon

Where are you going on your  
honeymoon?

We're flying to Jamaica for our  
honeymoon.

wedding day / anniversary  
It's our first wedding anniversary  
tomorrow.

silver / golden wedding  
It's my grandparents' golden  
wedding anniversary next year.

bachelor  
He is a confirmed bachelor.  
legitimate ↔ illegitimate children  
equality, equal rights /  
opportunities

equal, emancipated  
be faithful ↔ unfaithful to sb  
I was never unfaithful to her.  
affair

Casanova hatte viele Affären.

r **Liebhaber**, - / e **Geliebte**, -n

Hat er eine Geliebte?

Seine Frau hatte einen Liebhaber.

r **Frauenheld**, -en

s \***Vertrauen** ↔ s \***Misstrauen**

sich \***streiten** (stritt, hat gestritten) ↔

sich wieder **versöhnen**

r \***Kuss**, =e

(sich) \***küssen**

sich \***trennen**

Meine Eltern haben sich getrennt.

Sie leben jetzt getrennt.

e **Trennung**, -en

Trennungen sind immer schmerzhaft.

**scheitern / in die Brüche gehen** (ging,  
ist gegangen)

Unsere Ehe ist gescheitert / in die Brüche  
gegangen.

e **Scheidung**, -en

Die Zahl der Scheidungen nimmt von Jahr  
zu Jahr zu.

Susanne hat die Scheidung eingereicht.

Sie leben in Scheidung.

r **Scheidungsanwalt**, =e

**sich scheiden lassen** (lässt, ließ, hat  
gelassen)

Anton will sich scheiden lassen.

**geschieden sein**

Wir haben uns in gegenseitigem

Einvernehmen scheiden lassen.

r Exmann, =er // e Exfrau, -en

r **Unterhalt** Sg /

e **Unterhaltszahlung**, -en

Muss er Unterhalt für seine Ex-Frau

zahlen? – Für die Frau nicht, aber für die  
Kinder.

**Alimente** Pl

s **Sorgerecht**

s **alleinige** ↔ **gemeinsame** Sorgerecht

Casanova had many affairs.

(male / female) lover / mistress

Has he got a mistress?

His wife had a lover.

lady-killer

trust / confidence ↔ distrust,  
suspiciousness

argue ↔ make it up (again)

kiss

to kiss

separate

My parents have separated.

They are separated now.

separation

A separation is always a painful  
affair.

fail / break up

Our marriage broke up.

divorce

The number of divorces is going  
up year by year.

Sue has filed for divorce.

They are in the process of getting  
divorced.

divorce lawyer

get divorced

Anton wants a divorce.

be divorced

We got divorced by mutual  
consent.

ex-husband // ex-wife

maintenance / maintenance  
payment

Does he have to pay maintenance

for his ex-wife? – Not for his  
wife, but for the children.

alimony

custody

sole ↔ joint custody



In Germany parents are automatically granted *das gemeinsame Sorgerecht* (joint custody) when they divorce. If one parent wishes to have *das alleinige Sorgerecht* (sole custody), they have to make a special application and give their reasons.

# Kinder Children

s <b>Ungeborene</b> , -n / s ungeborene Kind	unborn child
s * <b>Baby</b> , -s [ˈbe:bi] / r <b>Säugling</b> , -e	baby / infant
s * <b>Kind</b> , -er	child
r * <b>Junge</b> , -n // s * <b>Mädchen</b> , -	boy // girl
r * <b>Bub</b> , -en <i>südd./österr./schweiz.</i>	boy
e <b>Schwangerschaft</b> , -en	pregnancy
Sie ist * <b>schwanger</b> . / Sie bekommt ein Baby / ein Kind.	She is pregnant. / She is going to have a baby / a child.
Sie ist im vierten Monat schwanger.	She's in the fourth month (of pregnancy).
e werdende Mutter	mother-to-be
e morgendliche <b>Übelkeit</b>	morning sickness
e <b>Wehe</b> , -n	contraction
das Einsetzen der Wehen	the onset of labour
e <b>Hebamme</b> , -n	midwife
e <b>Entbindung</b> , -en	delivery
e <b>Entbindungsklinik</b> , -en	maternity hospital
e * <b>Geburt</b> , -en	birth
ein Kind <b>gebären</b> / <b>zur Welt bringen</b>	give birth to a child
Unsere Tochter wurde heute früh <b>geboren</b> .	Our daughter was born this morning.
jm <b>ähnlich sein</b> / <b>sehen</b>	look similar to / resemble sb
Sie ist/sieht ihrer Mutter sehr ähnlich.	She looks very like her mother.
e <b>Geburtsurkunde</b> , -n	birth certificate
r <b>Kaiserschnitt</b> , -e	Caesarean (section)
Unser Sohn kam per Kaiserschnitt zur Welt.	Our son was born by Caesarean (section).
e <b>Fehlgeburt</b> , -en	miscarriage
e <b>Frühgeburt</b> , -en	premature birth
Das Baby kam zehn Wochen zu früh.	The baby was ten weeks premature.
<b>Zwillinge</b> Pl / <b>Drillinge</b> Pl	twins / triplets
Eineiige Zwillinge kann man kaum unterscheiden.	You can hardly tell identical twins apart.
* <b>unterscheiden</b> (unterschied, hat unterschieden)	distinguish, tell apart
e <b>Taufe</b> , -n	baptism, christening
s <b>Patenkind</b> , -er	godchild
s Göttikind, -er <i>schweiz.</i>	godchild
r <b>Pate</b> , -n / r Patenonkel, - //	godfather // godmother
e <b>Patin</b> , -nen / e Patentante, -n	godfather // godmother
r Götti, - // e Gotte, -n <i>schweiz.</i>	

**stillen**

Ich habe meine Tochter sechs Monate lang gestillt.  
die **Flasche geben** (gibt, gab, hat gegeben)  
den Schoppen geben *schweiz.*

**füttern**

r **Schnuller**, – / r Didi, –s *ugs.*

r Nuggi, – *schweiz.*

e **Windel**, –n

**wickeln / die Windel wechseln**

r \***Topf**, =e

Musst du auf den Topf?

das Baby \***baden**

das Baby \***anziehen** ↔ \***ausziehen** (zog an/aus, hat an/ausgezogen)

das Baby abziehen *schweiz.*

s **Wiegenlied**, –er / s **Schlaflied**, –er

ein Schlaflied singen

e **Gutenachtgeschichte**, –n

eine \***Geschichte vorlesen** (liest vor, las vor, hat vorgelesen)

das Kind **ins Bett bringen** (brachte, hat gebracht)

Ich muss jetzt die Kinder ins Bett bringen.

\***aufwachen** ↔ \***einschlafen** (schläft ein, schlief ein, ist eingeschlafen)

s **Trotzalter**

e **Pflege**

ein Kind **in Pflege geben** (gibt, gab, hat gegeben) ↔ **nehmen** (nimmt, nahm, hat genommen)

**Pflegeeltern Pl**

**adoptieren**

e **Adoption**, –en

**zur Adoption freigeben** (gibt frei, gab frei, hat freigegeben)

Wir möchten ein Kind adoptieren.

s **Adoptivkind**, –er / s adoptierte Kind

r **Vormund**

r/e **Waise**, –n / s **Waisenkind**, –er

s **Waisenhaus**, =er

r/e **Alleinerziehende**, –n

e berufstätige Mutter

e \***Verantwortung**, –en

Verantwortung übernehmen / tragen

breast-feed

I breast-fed my daughter for six months.

give (a baby) its bottle /

bottle-feed (a baby)

give (a baby) its bottle /

bottle-feed (a baby)

feed

dummy, pacifier

dummy, pacifier

nappy, diaper

change the baby's nappy / diaper

potty

Do you need to go to the potty?

bath(e) the baby

dress ↔ undress the baby

undress the baby

lullaby

sing a lullaby

bedtime story

read (sb) a story

put the child to bed

I must put the children to bed now.

wake up ↔ fall asleep

difficult age

care

have a child fostered ↔ foster a child

foster parents

adopt

adoption

put up for adoption

We'd like to adopt a child.

adopted child

guardian

orphan

orphanage

single parent

working mother

responsibility

take (on) / bear responsibility

e \***Erziehung**

r Erziehungsurlaub / e Elternzeit  
ein Kind **großziehen** / **aufziehen** (zog  
auf, hat aufgezogen)

\***erziehen** (erzog, hat erzogen)

Sie wurde streng erzogen.

Ihre Kinder sind sehr gut erzogen.

r **Erzieher**, – // e **Erzieherin**, -nen

Die Erzieherinnen in unserem  
Kindergarten sind sehr nett.

r/e **Erziehungsberechtigte**, -n

e **Erziehungsberatung**

r **Erziehungsberater**, – //

e **Erziehungsberaterin**, -nen

\***schimpfen**

Ich muss jetzt nach Hause, sonst schimpft  
meine Mutter.

\***schlagen** (schlägt, schlug,  
hat geschlagen) / **hauen**

Du sollst nicht andere Kinder hauen!

sein Kind \***loben**

sein Kind **verwöhnen**

Erwin ist ziemlich verwöhnt.

Er ist \***fröch** / ungezogen ↔ **brav**.

Ihr Sohn kann **sich** einfach nicht

**benhmen!**

e \***Schwierigkeit**, -en

Verwöhnte Kinder machen in der Schule  
oft Schwierigkeiten.

ein Kind **misshandeln**

e **Kindesmisshandlung** /

r **Kindesmissbrauch**

e **Kinderbetreuung**

r **Babysitter**, - ['be:bizitə]

s **Aupair** (-mädchen, -) [o: 'pe:ɪ]

s **Kindermädchen**, – /

e **Kinderfrau**, -en

s **Taschengeld**

s Sackgeld *schweiz*.

Wir haben sein Taschengeld auf 5 Euro  
erhöht.

upbringing

(longterm) maternity leave  
bring up / raise / rear a child

educate

She had a strict upbringing.

Their children have been well  
brought up.

kindergarten teacher

The teachers at our kindergarten  
are very nice.

parent or guardian

child guidance

child guidance counsellor

tell off

I have to go home now, or my  
mother will tell me off.

hit

You're not to hit other children.

laud one's child

spoil one's child

Erwin is pretty spoilt.

He is cheeky / naughty, badly  
behaved ↔ good.

Their son just doesn't know how  
to behave.

difficulty

Spoilt children often cause  
difficulties in school.

maltreat a child

maltreatment of children / child  
abuse

child care, childminding

babysitter

au-pair (girl)

nanny

pocket money, allowance

pocket money, allowance

We've increased his pocket  
money / allowance to 5 euros.



- 4.1 Essen**  
**Eating**
- 4.2 Trinken**  
**Bevarages**
- 4.3 Rauchen**  
**Smoking**
- 4.4 Körperpflege**  
**Personal hygiene**
- 4.5 Kleidung**  
**Clothing**
- 4.6 Einkaufen**  
**Shopping**

# 4

**Dinge des Alltags**  
**Everyday life**

# Essen

## Eating

* <b>essen</b> (isst, aß, hat gegessen)	eat
s * <b>Essen</b> Sg	food
s * <b>Frühstück</b>	breakfast
s * <b>Morgenessen</b> , - / r / s Zmorge(n), - schweiz.	breakfast
r * <b>Honig</b>	honey
e * <b>Marmelade</b> , -n / e * <b>Konfitüre</b> , -n	jam, jelly
Was trinken Sie zum Frühstück: Tee oder Kaffee?	What do you have for breakfast: tea or coffee?
Ich frühstücke immer um 7 (Uhr).	I always have breakfast at 7 (o'clock).
s * <b>Mittagessen</b>	lunch
Zum Mittagessen gibt es heute Pasta.	There's pasta for lunch today.
s * <b>Abendessen</b>	supper, dinner
s Nachtessen <i>schweiz.</i>	supper, dinner
Wir gehen heute zum Abendessen aus.	We're going out for dinner this evening.
s * <b>Menü</b> , -s	set meal, menu [= sequence of dishes]



### False friends

German **Menü** corresponds to "menu" in the sense of a sequence of dishes, but not in the sense of a printed list from which you choose:

*ein viergängiges Menü* = a four-course menu

*Können wir bitte noch einmal die \*Speisekarte haben?* – Can we have the menu again, please?

e * <b>Mahlzeit</b> , -en	meal
eine warme ↔ kalte Mahlzeit	a hot ↔ cold meal



Breakfast (**Frühstück**) in Germany (, Austria and Switzerland) normally consists of bread, rolls and butter, jam, honey and maybe a boiled egg. More recently, more and more people have taken to eating muesli, croissants, toast, yoghurt, or just fruit. Lunch (**Mittagessen**) starts between 12 and 1 and is usually a cooked meal with meat, potatoes, rice or pasta, vegetables or salad.

For supper (**Abendessen**) there's bread and butter, sausage and cheese. But with more and more people, especially in the cities, no longer going home for lunch, more and more families have a cooked meal in the evening.

e Zwischenmahlzeit, -en	snack [between meals]
e Brotzeit <i>südd.</i> / r Snack, -s	snack, sandwiches / snack
e Jause, -n <i>österr.</i>	snack
Brotzeit machen <i>südd.</i> / jausnen <i>österr.</i>	have a snack [between meals]
s * <b>Picknick</b> , -s	picnic

Treffen wir uns doch am Samstag zum  
Picknick am See!  
r **Brunch** [brantʃ]  
Kommt ihr am Sonntag zum Brunch zu  
uns? So gegen 12?

r **\*Hunger**  
**\*hungrig** ↔ **\*satt** sein

Ich habe großen Hunger. / Ich bin sehr  
hungrig.

r **\*Appetit**  
Guten Appetit! – Danke, **\*ebenfalls** /  
**\*ebenso** / **\*gleichfalls**.

**\*ausgezeichnet**  
„Das Essen war ausgezeichnet.“

**\*enttäuschen**  
Das Essen hat uns leider enttäuscht.

**\*anbieten** (bot an, hat angeboten)  
Was darf ich Ihnen anbieten?

sich **\*ernähren**  
Ich versuche, mich gesund zu ernähren.

e **Ernährung**  
fettarme Ernährung  
**\*gesunde** ↔ **\*ungesunde** Ernährung

**\*vegetarisch**  
r **Vegetarier**, - //  
e **Vegetarierin**, -nen

Ich bin Vegetarier.  
s **\*Nahrungsmittel**, -

**Lebensmittel** Pl  
e **Fertignahrung** Sg  
e **\*Dose**, -n / e **\*Büchse**, -n  
Essen aus der Dose / Büchse

e **Kalorie**, -n  
e kalorienarme ↔ kalorienreiche Kost /  
Ernährung

e **\*Diät**, -en  
eine Diät machen

e **\*Milch**  
s **Milchprodukt**, -e  
e fettarme Milch / e Vollmilch

e **\*Butter**  
e **\*Margarine**  
e süße ↔ saure **\*Sahne**  
r Schlagobers ↔ r Sauerrahm *österr.*  
r **\*Rahm** ↔ r **Sauerrahm** *südd.*

Let's meet for a picnic by the lake  
on Saturday.

brunch  
Will you come round for brunch  
on Sunday? About 12?

hunger  
be hungry ↔ be full, have had  
enough to eat  
I'm very hungry.

appetite  
Bon appetit! / Enjoy your meal. –  
Thank you, (and) the same to you.

excellent, delicious  
“The meal was excellent/  
delicious.”

disappoint  
Sadly, the food was disappointing.  
to offer

What can I offer you?  
eat, feed on, live on  
I try to live on a healthy diet.

diet  
low-fat diet  
healthy ↔ unhealthy diet  
vegetarian  
vegetarian

I'm a vegetarian.  
food (item)  
food (stuff)

convenience food  
tin, can  
tinned / canned food  
calorie  
low-calorie food ↔ food rich in  
calories

diet  
be/go on a diet  
milk  
dairy product  
low-fat milk / whole milk, full  
cream milk

butter  
margarine  
sweet ↔ sour cream  
sweet ↔ sour cream  
sweet ↔ sour cream

e Schlagsahne / r Schlagrahm *südd.* /

r Schlagobers *österr.*

die Sahne steif schlagen

r **Jog(h)urt** / r Fruchtjoghurt

r \***Quark** / r Fruchtequark

r \***Topfen** *südd.* / *österr.*

r \***Käse** / e Käsesorte, -n

r Camembert [ˈkaməmbɛ:ʁ]

r Weichkäse ↔ r Hartkäse

s \***Eis**

e Glace, -n *schweiz.* [glas]

s Frucht(eis) / s Milch(speise)eis

s \***Ei**, -er

s \***Brot**, -e

e Scheibe Brot / e Brotscheibe

Brot aufschneiden (schnitt auf, hat aufgeschnitten)

s \***Gebäck** Sg

whipped / whipping cream

whip up the cream (until it's stiff)

yoghurt / fruit yoghurt

fromage frais / fromage frais with fruit

fromage frais

cheese / sort of cheese

camembert

soft ↔ hard cheese

ice (-cream)

ice (-cream)

fruit / milk ice-cream

egg

bread

slice of bread

to slice bread

cakes and pastries, biscuits



### Sorts of bread

s Weißbrot

s Graubrot / s Ruchbrot (*schweiz.*)

s Vollkornbrot

s Toastbrot [ˈto:stbro:t]

s \*Brötchen, - / e \*Semmel, -n (*südd.* / *österr.*) / s Semmeli, - (*schweiz.*) /

s Bürl, - (*schweiz.*)

s belegte Brötchen / s Sandwich [ˈzɛntvɪʃ]

e Breze, -n / e Brezel, -n

white bread

bread made from rye and wheat flour

wholemeal bread

bread for toasting

roll

filled roll / sandwich

pretzel

### Cakes and pastries

r \*Kuchen, -

r Obstkuchen / r Fruchtkuchen (*schweiz.*)

e Torte, -n

e Sahnnetorte

s \*Hörnchen, - / s Kipferl, - (*österr.*)

s Nusshörnchen, - / r Nussgipfel (*schweiz.*)

e Waffel, -n

s/r Keks, -e / s Guetsli, - (*schweiz.*)

r \*Pfannkuchen, - / r Palatschinken, - (*österr.*)

cake

fruit flan

gateau, flan

cream cake / gateau

croissant

pastry with nuts

waffle

biscuit

pancake

s \***Getreide** Sg

r Weizen

r Roggen

r Hafer / Haferflocken Pl

grain, corn, cereal

wheat

rye

oats / oat flakes

**s Müsli**s Müesli / s Birchermüesli, - *schweiz.***CorNFLakes** *Pl* ['ko:gnfle:ks]**r \*Mehl**

s Vollkornmehl

**r \*Reis****\*Nudeln** *Pl***Spagetti** *Pl* / e **Pasta****r Kloß**, =e**r \*Knödel**, - *südd./österr.***r Semmelknödel**, - /

r Kartoffelknödel, -

**r Teig**, -e

den Teig kneten / rühren

**r Pizzateig** / **r Brotteig****s \*Fleisch** *Sg*Wie lange ist das Fleisch **\*hältbar**?

s Haltbarkeitsdatum, -daten

das Fleisch schneiden

**s Geflügel** *Sg***s Wild** *Sg*e **\*Wurst** / Wurstsorten, -n

e Wurst, =e

aufgeschnitten ↔ am Stück

r Aufschnitt *Sg*

muesli

muesli

cornflakes

flour

wholemeal flour

rice

pasta, noodles

spaghetti / pasta

dumpling

dumpling

bread dumpling / potato dumpling

dough, pastry

knead / stir the dough

pizza dough / bread dough

meat

How long will the meat keep for?

eat-by date / best-before date

carve / cut the meat

poultry

game

sausage / sausage varieties

sausage

sliced ↔ unsliced

cold cuts, cold meat(s)

**Meat**s *Rindfleisch*s *Schweinefleisch*s *Kalbfleisch*s *Lammfleisch*s *Putenfleisch*s *Trutenfleisch (schweiz.)*s *\*Hackfleisch*s *\*Faschierte (österr.)*r (*geräucherte*) *Speck*r *\*Schinken (\*roh ↔ gekocht)*

beef

pork

veal

lamb

turkey

turkey

mince

mince

(smoked) bacon

ham (uncooked ↔ cooked)

**Poultry**s *\*Huhn, =er / s \*Hähnchen, -*s *\*Poulet, -s [pu'le:] (schweiz.)*e *Ente, -n*e *Gans, =e*e *Pute, -n / r Truthahn, =e*

chicken

chicken

duck

goose

turkey

**Game**s *Reh, -e*r *Hirsch, -e*s *Wildschwein, -e*

venison [from roe-deer]

venison [from deer]

wild boar



r Hase, -n  
s Kaninchen, -

hare  
rabbit

### Sausage

s Wiener Würstchen, -  
s Frankfurter Würstel, - (österreich.)  
s Wienerli, - / s Frankfurterli, - (Schweiz.)  
e Bratwurst, =e  
e Nürnberger Rostbratwurst, =e  
e Leberwurst, =e  
e Salami, -[s]

wiener  
wiener  
wiener  
grilled sausage  
Nuremberg grilled sausage  
liver sausage  
salami

r \***Braten**, -

roast

r / s **Gulasch** [auch 'gö...]

goulash

s \***Steak**, -s [ste:k]

steak

s \***Schnitzel**, - ['fnitsl]

schmitzel

s **Kotelett**, -s

cutlet, chop

e \***Soße**, -n / e \***Sauce**, -n ['zo:sə]

sauce, gravy

r \***Fisch**, -e

fish



### Fish

e Forelle, -n trout  
r Zander, - pike-perch  
r Rotbarsch, -e ocean perch / redfish/  
rosefish  
r Hecht, -e pike  
e Renke, -n whitefish  
r Karpfen, - carp  
s Fischstäbchen, - fish finger(s) / stick(s)

e Scholle, -n plaice  
e Seezunge, -n sole  
e Sardine, -n sardine  
r Lachs, -e salmon  
r Räucherlachs smoked salmon  
r Heilbutt halibut  
r Hering, - herring  
r Tunfisch, -e tuna fish

### Meeresfrüchte Pl

seafood

e **Auster**, -n

oyster

e **Krabbe**, -n / e Garnele, -n /

shrimp, prawn

e Crevette, -n

r Krabbensalat

prawn cocktail

s \***Gewürz**, -e

spice, herb, seasoning

### würzen

to season

s \***Salz**

salt

r \***Pfeffer**

pepper

frische **Kräuter**

fresh herbs

r Salzstreuer, -

salt cellar, saltshaker

e Pfeffermühle, -n

pepper mill

**Spices**

<i>e Petersilie</i>	parsley	<i>r Schnittlauch</i>	chive(s)
<i>s Basilikum</i>	basil	<i>s Oregano</i>	oregano
<i>r Rosmarin</i>	rosemary	<i>r Salbei</i>	sage
<i>e Nelke</i>	clove	<i>e Muskatnuss</i>	nutmeg
<i>r Chili</i>	chili	<i>s Lorbeerblatt</i>	bay leaf
<i>r Zimt</i>	cinnamon		

**r \*Zucker**

Das schmeckt **\*süß** / **\*sauer** / **\*salzig** / **\*bitter**.

Das schmeckt ganz schön **\*scharf**.  
(schärfer, schärfst-)

r **\*Essig**, -e

s **\*Öl**, -e

s Olivenöl / s Sonnenblumenöl

r süße ↔ scharfe **Senf**, -e

s **\*Gemüse** Sg

s **Kilo**, -[s] / s **Pfund**, -[e] *südd.*

Ein Pfund / halbes Kilo Tomaten bitte.

sugar

This tastes sweet / sour / salty / bitter.

This tastes pretty hot.

vinegar

oil

olive oil / sunflower oil

sweet ↔ hot mustard

vegetable(s)

kilo / pound

A pound / Half a kilo of tomatoes, please.

**Vegetables**

*e \*Kartoffel*, -n

Salzkartoffeln / Bratkartoffeln

*r Kartoffelbrei / Pommes Frites (Pl)*

*r Kartoffelstock (schweiz.)*

*e Karotte*, -n (*südd./österr.*) / *e Mohrrübe*, -n /

*e gelbe Rübe*, -n / *e Möhre*, -n

*s Rübli*, - (*schweiz.*)

*e \*Tomate*, -n / *r \*Paradeiser*, - (*österr.*)

*e \*Zwiebel*, -n / *Frühlingszwiebeln*

*e Gurke*, -n

*e Paprika*, -s

*Peperoni (Pl) (schweiz.)*

*e Aubergine*, -n

*e Zucchini*, -s / *Zucchetti (Pl) (schweiz.)*

*r \*Pilz*, -e / s *\*Schwammerl*, - (*südd./österr.*)

*r Champignon*, -s

*e Erbse*, -n

*e \*Bohne*, -n

*r Spargel*

*r Kohl* / *r Weißkohl* / *r Rotkohl* / *s Blaukraut*

*r Blumenkohl* / *r Karfiol (österr.)*

*r Rosenkohl* / *Kohlsprossen (Pl) (österr.)*

potato

boiled potatoes / fried potatoes,  
roast potatoes

potato puree / chips, French fries

potato puree

carrot

carrot

tomato

onion / French onion

cucumber

pepper

pepper

eggplant, aubergine

courgette, zucchini

mushroom

mushroom

pea

bean

asparagus

cabbage / white cabbage / red

cabbage / red cabbage

cauliflower

Brussel sprout(s)



r *Broccoli*  
r *Spinat*  
r *Mais*

broccoli  
spinach  
sweetcorn

r \***Salat**, -e  
e **Salatsoße**, -n / s **Dressing**, -s  
r Kopfsalat / r grüne Salat  
r Eissalat / r Krautsalat / r Tomatensalat /  
r Gurkensalat  
r gemischte Salat  
r **Obstsalat**  
r Fruchtsalat *schweiz.*  
s \***Obst** Sg / e **Frucht**, =e  
Obst schälen  
e Schale, -n  
r Kern, -e

salad, lettuce  
salad dressing  
lettuce  
iceberg lettuce / coleslaw / tomato  
salad / cucumber salad  
mixed salad  
fruit salad  
fruit salad  
fruit  
peel fruit  
skin  
kernel



### Fruit

r \**Apfel*, =  
e \**Birne*, -n  
r *Pfirsich*, -e  
e \**Aprikose*, -n  
e \**Marille*, -n (österreich.)  
e *Nektarine*, -n  
e *Banane*, -n  
e *Kirsche*, -n  
e \**Pflaume*, -n  
e *Zwetschge*, -n  
e \**Orange*, -n [o'rãzə] / e \**Apfelsine*, -n  
e *Grapefruit*, -s ['gre:pfru:t]  
e *Mandarine*, -n  
e \**Zitrone*, -n  
e *Weintraube*, -n / e *Traube*, -n  
e *Rosjine*, -n  
e *Weinbeere*, -n (schweiz.)  
e *Artischocke*, -n  
e *Dattel*, -n  
e *Ananas*, -  
e *Nuss*, =e  
e *Walnuss* / e *Haselnuss* / e *Erdnuss*  
e *Baumnuss*, =e (schweiz.)  
e *Kastanie*, -n

apple  
pear  
peach  
apricot  
apricot  
nectarine  
banana  
cherry  
plum  
damson  
orange  
grapefruit  
mandarin (orange), tangerine  
lemon  
grape  
raisin, dried grape  
raisin, dried grape  
artichoke  
date  
pineapple  
nut  
walnut / hazelnut / peanut  
walnut  
chestnut

### Soft fruit

e *Erdbeere*, -n  
e *Johannisbeere*, -n  
e *Ribisel*, -n (österreich.)

strawberry  
redcurrant, blackcurrant  
redcurrant, blackcurrant



e Himbeere, -n	raspberry
e Brombeere, -n	blackberry
e Blaubeere, -n / e Heidelbeere, -n	bilberry
e Stachelbeere, -n	gooseberry

* <b>reif</b> / überreif ↔ <b>unreif</b>	ripe / overripe ↔ unripe
Äpfel <b>ernten</b> / <b>pflücken</b>	pick apples
r * <b>Nachts</b> isch / e * <b>Nachs</b> peise, -n /	dessert
s * <b>Dessert</b> , -s [de'se:ʁ]	
e <b>Süßigkeit</b> , -en	sweet
e * <b>Schokol</b> ade, -n	chocolate
eine Tafel / ein Stückchen Schokolade	a bar / piece of chocolate
r Schokoriegel, -	chocolate bar
s Marzipan Sg	marzipan
s Nougat Sg	nougat
e <b>Praline</b> , -n / s <b>Konfekt</b> Sg	[individual] chocolate / confectionery
s/r * <b>Bonbon</b> , -s [bõ'bõ:]	sweet
s <b>Gummibärchen</b> , -	jelly baby

## Trinken Beverages

* <b>trinken</b> (trank, hat getrunken)	to drink
s * <b>Getränk</b> , -e	drink
alkoholfreie ↔ alkohlhaltige Getränke	soft, non-alcoholic ↔ alcoholic drinks
r * <b>Durst</b>	thirst
<b>durstig</b> sein	be thirsty
Hast du Durst? / Bist du durstig?	Are you thirsty?
s <b>Leitungswasser</b>	tap-water

The tap-water in Germany, Austria and Switzerland is of a very high quality and can be drunk without reservation.



s * <b>Mineralwasser</b>	mineral water
stilles Mineralwasser / Mineralwasser ohne Kohlensäure	still / uncarbonated mineral water
e <b>Kohlensäure</b>	carbonic acid
Ich möchte bitte ein stilles Mineralwasser.	I'd like a still mineral water, please.
r * <b>Saft</b> , =e	juice
* <b>enthalten</b> (enthält, enthielt, hat enthalten)	contain

Dieser Saft enthält viele Vitamine.

r Orangensaft  
frisch gepresster Orangensaft  
r Apfelsaft  
e Apfelsaftschorle

gespritzter Apfelsaft *österr.*

e/s (Coca-) \***Cola**<sup>®</sup>

e \***Limonade**

e Orangen- / Zitronenlimonade

s/r **Spezi**<sup>®</sup>

r \***Kaffee** [*auch* ka'fe:]

Ich möchte bitte eine Tasse Kaffee.

s Kännchen Kaffee

r Milchkaffee

s Haferl Milchkaffee

s **Koffein**

koffeinfreier Kaffee

This juice contains a lot of vitamins.

orange juice

freshly pressed orange juice

apple juice

apple juice with mineral water,  
spritzer

apple juice with mineral water,  
spritzer

Coca-Cola™, Coke™

lemonade

orangeade / lemonade

cola mixed with lemonade

coffee

I'd like a cup of coffee, please.

a [small] pot of coffee

coffee with plenty of milk, latte

a mug of milky coffee

cafein

decaffeinated coffee



*Kaffee* is a meal in its own right, like tea in Britain. In southern Germany people drink coffee at about 3 o'clock in the afternoon, especially at the weekend, and eat a piece of cake or biscuits. The coffee is served with sugar and cream (*Sahne*, or *Schlag* in Austria *Rahm* in Switzerland), milk or evaporated milk. In northern Germany, people tend more to drink tea in the afternoons.

r \***Tee** [te:] / Teesorten

Möchten Sie den Tee mit Milch oder  
Zitronen?

r schwarze / grüne Tee

r **Kräutertee**

r Pfefferminztee / r Kamillentee /

r Früchtetee

e \***Milch**

fettarme Milch ↔ Vollmilch

e (heiße) \***Schokolade**

r **Kakao** [ka'kau]

Möchtest du einen Kakao?

e Ovomaltine *schweiz.*

r \***Alkohol**

Was darf ich Ihnen zu trinken anbieten?

r **Aperitif**, -s [aperi'ti:f]

r **Cocktail**, -s ['kɔkte:l]

einen Cocktail mixen

r **Likör**, -e

r Liqueur, -s *schweiz.*

r **Sekt**

*tea* / varieties of tea

Would you like your tea with milk  
or lemon?

black / green tea

herbal tea

peppermint / camomile / fruit tea

milk

low-fat ↔ full-cream milk

(hot) chocolate

cocoa

Would you like a hot chocolate?

[(hot) beverage made of malt]

alcohol

What can I offer you to drink?

aperitif

cocktail

mix a cocktail

liqueur

liqueur

sparkling wine, champagne

r **Champagner** [ʃam'panjɐ]

r **\*Wein**, -e

Schenkst du bitte den Wein ein?

r Weißwein / r Rotwein / r Rosé [ro'ze:]

**lieblich** ↔ **\*tröcken**

Können Sie mir bitte einen trockenen  
Rotwein empfehlen?

r **Jahrgang**, =e

1998 war ein guter Jahrgang.

r **Schnaps**, =e

r Digestif, -s [dige'sti:f]

s **\*Bier**, -e

helles ↔ dunkles Bier

Noch ein Bier, bitte!

alkoholfreies Bier

ein Kasten Bier

r **\*Kasten**, = / e **\*Kiste**, -n *österr.*

s Altbier

s Weißbier / s Weizenbier

s Radler

s Starkbier

s Pils

**\*Prost!**

champagne

wine

Can you pour out the wine,  
please?

white / red / rosé wine

sweet ↔ dry

Could you recommend a dry red  
wine?

vintage

1998 was a good year.

schnapps

digestive

beer

light ↔ dark beer

Another beer, please.

alcohol-free beer

a crate of beer

crate

(top-fermented dark) beer

weissbeer

shandy

strong beer

pilsener

Cheers!

If you order a beer, in the Rhineland you automatically get 0.2 of a litre, but in Bavaria 0.5 or 0.4. At the Oktoberfest in Munich, in the Hofbräuhaus or in a beer garden (*Biergarten*), you can usually only order *eine Mass* (= 1 Liter / 1 litre).

If you are in Switzerland and would like to order a glass of beer, you have to ask for a *Stange*, which is usually 0.3 of a litre.



**nüchtern** ↔ **betrunken** sein

blau sein *ugs.*

Er war gestern Abend total betrunken /  
blau.

r / e Betrunkene, -n

e **\*Flasche**, -n

s **\*Glas**, =er

Lasst uns doch ein Glas Wein zusammen  
trinken!

r **Flaschenöffner**, -

aufmachen ↔ zustöpseln

r **Korkenzieher**, -

r Zapfenzieher, - *schweiz.*

r Korken, -

Wein **eingießen** (goss ein, hat  
eingegossen) / **einschenken**

Wein nachgießen / nachschenken

be sober ↔ drunk

be tight, plastered

He was completely drunk /  
absolutely plastered last night.

drunk, drunkard

bottle

glass

Let's have a glass of wine together.

bottle opener

open ↔ cork, put a cork in

corkscrew

corkscrew

cork

pour out wine

top up sb's glass with wine

**verschütten****\*probieren** / **\*kosten**

einen Schluck trinken

das Glas austrinken

Der Wein **\*schmeckt** wunderbar!Die Flasche ist (halb)**\*voll** ↔ (halb) **\*leer**.

spill, slop

taste

take a sip / gulp

empty the glass

The wine tastes wonderful.

The bottle is (half) full ↔ (half) empty.

## Rauchen Smoking

**\*rauchen**Hier ist das Rauchen **verboten!**Ich habe es endlich geschafft, mit dem  
Rauchen aufzuhören!r **\*Raucher**, - ↔ r **\*Nichtraucher**, -

Ich rauche nicht. / Ich bin Nichtraucher.

r Raucherhusten

r Kettenraucher, -

r Gelegenheitsraucher, -

r Raucherbereich ↔ r Nichtraucherbereich

Darf ich hier rauchen?

r **Tabak** Sg

r Drehtabak

s Zigarettenpapier, -e

e selbst gedrehte Zigarette

eine Zigarette drehen

s **Nikotin**e **\*Zigarette**, -n

e Filterzigarette, -n

Zigaretten ohne Filter / filterlose

Zigaretten

eine **Schachtel** / eine **Packung**

Zigaretten

r Zigarettenautomat, -en

e Stange(, -n) Zigaretten

to smoke

Smoking is not permitted

here. / No smoking.

I have finally succeeded in giving  
up smoking.

smoker ↔ non-smoker

I don't smoke. / I'm a non-smoker.

smoker's cough

chain-smoker

occasional smoker

smoking ↔ non-smoking area

May I smoke here?

tobacco

tobacco for rolling your own

cigarettes

cigarette paper

[one's own] rolled cigarette

roll a cigarette

nicotine

cigarette


filter cigarette

non-filter cigarettes

a packet of cigarettes

cigarette machine

carton of cigarettes



In Germany, cigarettes can also be bought from vending machines fixed to the walls of buildings in the street, or in pubs.

e **Zigarre**, -n

e Kiste(, -n) Zigarren

e **Pfeife**, -n

cigar

box of cigars

pipe

eine Zigarette / Zigarre / Pfeife **\*anzünden**  
 ↔ **\*ausmachen** / **ausdrücken**  
 e **Kippe**, -n  
 Haben Sie Feuer?  
 s **\*Feuerzeug**, -e  
 s **\*Streichholz**, =er  
 s **\*Zündholz**, =er *südd./österr./schweiz.*  
 r **\*Aschenbecher**, -

light ↔ extinguish / stub out a  
 cigarette / cigar / pipe  
 cigarette end  
 Do you have a light?  
 lighter  
 match  
 match  
 ashtray

## Körperpflege Personal hygiene

e **Körperpflege**

e **Hygiene**

**\*sauber** ↔ **\*schmutzig**  
**gepflegt** ↔ **un gepflegt**

sich **\*waschen** (wäscht, wusch, hat  
 gewaschen)

Hast du dir die Hände gewaschen?

**gründlich**

**\*baden** / ein Bad nehmen

e **\*Badewanne**, -n

Hast du schon gebadet?

(sich) **\*duschen**

e **\*Dusche**, -n

Ich gehe jetzt unter die Dusche.

e **\*Seife**, -n

e **Waschlotion**, -en

r **Waschlappen**, -

s **\*Handtuch**, =er

s Gästehandtuch

s Badetuch

sich die **\*Haare waschen**

s **Shampoo**, -s [ˈʃampo]

e Pflegespülung, -en

s Haarspray, -s

e **Haarbürste**, -n

r **Kamm**, =e

Vergiss nicht, dir noch die Haare zu  
 kämmen.

r **Föhn**, -e / r Haartrockner, -

**sich die Haare schneiden lassen**

Ich muss mir mal wieder die Haare  
 schneiden lassen.

personal hygiene

hygiene

clean ↔ dirty

neat ↔ untidy, ungroomed,  
 unkempt

wash

Did you wash your hands?

thorough(ly)

bath / have, take a bath

bath(tub)

Have you had a bath?

to shower

shower

I'm going to have a shower now.

(a bar of) soap

washing lotion

flannel

(hand) towel

towel for guests

bath towel

wash one's hair

*shampoo*

conditioner

hairspray

hairbrush

comb

Don't forget to comb your hair.

hair dryer

have one's hair cut

It's about time I had another

haircut.

r \***Friseur**, -e // e **Friseurin**, -nen  
[fri:'zø:g]

r \***Coiffeur**, -e // e \***Coiffeuse**, -n  
[køa'fø:g] // [køa'fø:zø] *schweiz.*

beim Friseur einen Termin vereinbaren

Morgen gehe ich zum Friseur.

hairdresser

hairdresser

fix an appointment at the  
hairdresser's

I'm having my hair cut / done  
tomorrow.



### At the hairdresser's

*waschen und schneiden*

\*kurz / kürzer

*an der Seite / seitlich*

\*vorn(e) ↔ \*hinten

r Pony ['pøni]

e Dauerwelle, -n

fönen

tönen

färben

wash and cut

short / shorter

at the side

in the front ↔ at the back

fringe

perm

blow-dry

tint

colour

sich die **Zähne putzen**

Ich muss mir noch die Zähne putzen.

e \***Zahnpasta**, -s / e \***Zahncreme**, -s

e **Zahnbürste**, -n

e **Zahnseide**, -n

sich die Zähne mit Zahnseide reinigen

sich nass ↔ trocken \***rasieren**

Ich muss mich noch rasieren.

e Trockenrasur ↔ e Nassrasur

e Rasiercreme, -s / r Rasierschaum

r **Rasierapparat**, -e

e **Rasierklinge**, -n

sich **schminken**

e **Schminke** / s **Make-up** [me:k'lap]

Make-up auftragen ↔ entfernen

clean one's teeth

I have to clean my teeth.

toothpaste

toothbrush

dental floss

floss one's teeth

to shave wet ↔ dry

I still have to shave.

dry shave ↔ wet shave

shaving cream / foam

razor, shaver

razor blade

put on make-up

make-up

apply ↔ remove make-up



### A few cosmetics

e \***Crème**, -s [kre:m]

e *Gesichtscreme*

e *Reinigungscreme*

e *Reinigungsmilch* (Sg)

e *Feuchtigkeitsscreme*

e *Körperlotion*, -en [...lo'tsjo:n]

s *Körperöl*

s *Duschgel*

s *Rouge* [ru:]

r *Puder*

r *Lidschatten*

cream

face cream

cleansing cream

cleansing milk

moisturizing cream

body lotion

body oil

shower gel

rouge

powder

eye shadow

e *Wimperntusche*, -n  
 r *Augenbrauenstift*, -e  
 r *Lippenstift*, -e  
 s *Deodorant* [delodo'rant], s *Deo* (ugs.)  
 s *Parfüm*

mascara  
 eyebrow pencil  
 lipstick  
 deodorant  
 perfume

e **Maniküre** / e **Pediküre**

e **Nagelschere**, -n

die Finger- / Fußnägel schneiden

e **Nagelfeile**, -n

r **Nagellack**, -e

e **Watte**

s Wattestäbchen, -

s **Taschentuch**, =er

s Papiertaschentuch, =er / s Tempo<sup>®</sup>, -s

sich die **Nase putzen**

s Toilettenpapier / s **\*Klopapier** ugs.

e **\*Toilette**, -n [tɔ'a'letə] /

s **\*WC**, -s / s **\*Klo**, -s ugs.

Ich muss auf die Toilette / aufs Klo.

Wo ist bitte die Toilette?

e **Slipeinlage**, -n

r **Tampon**, -s

e **Binde**, -n

manicure / pedicure

(pair of) nail scissors

cut one's finger / toe nails

nail file

nail polish/varnish

cotton (wool)

cotton bud / Q-tip<sup>™</sup>

handkerchief, hanky

tissue / Kleenex<sup>™</sup>

wipe one's nose

toilet paper, lavatory paper

toilet / loo, john

I have to go to the toilet / loo.

Where's the toilet, please?

panty liner

tampon

sanitary towel

## Kleidung Clothing

e **\*Kleidung** Sg / **\*Kleider** Pl

Ich gebe nicht viel für Kleidung aus.

Sie zieht sich immer gut an. / Sie ist immer gut gekleidet.

elegant / gut ↔ schlecht / schlampig / unordentlich gekleidet / angezogen sein

e **\*Mode**, -n

r **\*Trend**, -s [trɛnt]

modisch / modern ↔ altmodisch / unmodern

**\*tragen** (trägt, trug, hat getragen)

Sie trägt nie einen Hut.

sich **\*anziehen** (zog an, hat angezogen)

↔ sich **\*ausziehen**

sich abziehen *schweiz.*

**\*anhaben** (hatte an, hat angehabt)

clothes, clothing

I don't spend much on clothes.

She is always well dressed.

be stylishly / well ↔ badly / slovenly dressed

fashion

*trend*

fashionable / modern ↔

unfashionable

wear

She never wears a hat.

get dressed ↔ undressed

get undressed

wear / have sth on

Er hat ein blaues Hemd an.  
 Ich brauche etwas Neues zum Anziehen.  
 e \***Garderobe**, -n  
 Die Garderobe befindet sich dort hinten.

He's wearing a blue shirt.  
 I need something new to wear.  
 coat rack  
 The coat rack is over there. / You  
 can hang your things up over  
 there.

Darf ich Ihnen **den Mantel abnehmen**?  
 (nimmt ab, nahm ab, hat abgenommen)  
 Darf ich Ihnen **in den Mantel helfen**?  
 (hilft, half, hat geholfen)

May I take your coat?  
 May I help you into your coat?

**den Mantel ablegen**  
 Möchten Sie ablegen?

take off one's coat  
 Would you like to doff (your  
 coat)?

r \***Mantel**, =  
 r Wintermantel ↔ Sommermantel  
 r Regenmantel / r Pelzmantel  
 e \***Jacke**, -n  
 r **Anorak**, -s  
 e Windjacke, -n *schweiz.*  
 e **Mütze**, -n / e Kappe, -n  
 die Mütze aufsetzen  
 s Stirnband, =er  
 r **Hut**, =e  
 s \***Tuch**, =er / s Kopftuch  
 r **Schal**, -s / s Halstuch  
 r **Handschuh**, -e  
 s \***Kleid**, -er  
 s Abendkleid  
 s Hochzeitskleid  
 s Sommerkleid  
 r **Reißverschluss**, =e  
 Mein Reißverschluss ist offen. Kannst du  
 ihn mir bitte zumachen?  
 s \***Kostüm**, -e  
 r \***Rock**, =e  
 r Jupe, -s [ʒy:p] *schweiz.*  
 s **Jackett**, -s [ʒa'ket]  
 r Veston, -s [ves'tõ:] *schweiz.*  
 s Sakko, -s  
 e \***Hose**, -n  
 e kurze Hose  
 Können Sie die Hose kürzen?  
 e \***Jeans**, - [dʒi:ns]

coat  
 winter coat ↔ summer coat  
 raincoat / fur coat  
 jacket  
 anorak  
 anorak  
 cap  
 put on one's cap  
 headband  
 hat  
 scarf / headscarf  
 scarf [worn round the neck]  
 glove  
 dress  
 evening dress  
 wedding dress  
 summer dress  
 zip  
 My zip is open. Can you do it up  
 for me, please?  
 [women's] suit  
 skirt  
 skirt  
 jacket  
 jacket  
 sports jacket  
 (pair of) trousers  
 (pair of) shorts  
 Can you shorten the trousers?  
 jeans



 **Singular in German**

*Diese Hose war nicht teuer.*

These trousers weren't / This pair of trousers wasn't expensive.

*Nimm doch deine kurze Hose mit.*

Why don't you take your shorts with you?

*Diese Jeans ist zu eng.*

These jeans are / This pair of jeans is too tight.

*Diese Strumpfhose hat eine Laufmasche.*

These tights have got / This pair of tights has got a ladder.

*Wo ist Daniels Badehose ?*

Where are Daniel's swimming trunks?

r * <b>A</b> nzug, =e	suit
r Hosenanzug	trouser suit
r Trainingsanzug	tracksuit
e * <b>W</b> este, -n	waistcoat (GB) / vest (US)
s Gilet, -s [ʒi'le:] <i>schweiz.</i>	waistcoat (GB) / vest (US)
r <b>S</b> moking, -s [ˈsmo:kɪŋ]	dinner jacket/suit (GB) / tuxedo (US)
r <b>F</b> rack, -s	tails, evening dress
e <b>K</b> rawatte, -n	tie
die Krawatte binden	to tie one's tie
e <b>F</b> liege, -n	bow tie
s * <b>H</b> emd, -en	shirt
e * <b>B</b> luse, -n	blouse
r Ärmel, -	sleeve
langärmelig ↔ kurzärmelig / ärmellos	long-sleeved ↔ short-sleeved / sleeveless
r Kragen, -	collar
r Knopf, =e	button
aufknöpfen ↔ zuknöpfen	to unbutton ↔ button up
einen Knopf annähen	sew on a button
s <b>T</b> -Shirt, -s [ˈti:ʃɔ:tʃɪt]	T-shirt
r * <b>P</b> ullover, - [ˈpʊl:vɐ]	pullover
e <b>S</b> trickjacke, -n	cardigan
e * <b>U</b> nterwäsche <i>Sg</i>	underwear
e <b>B</b> adekleidung <i>Sg</i>	swimwear

**Underwear**

e \***U**nterhose, -n

r **U**nterrock, =e

r \***S**ljp, -s / r **S**chlüpfer, -

Boxershorts

e *lange* Unterhose, -n

e *Ski*unterwäsche

s \***U**nterhemd, -en

r **B**üstenhalter, - / r **BH**, -s

(under)pants

underskirt, petticoat

panties

boxer shorts

longjohns

underwear for skiing

vest (GB) / undershirt (US)

bra

e Strumpfhose, -n

s Korsett, -s

(pair of) tights

corset

### Swimwear

e Badehose, -n

r Badeanzug, =e

r Bikini, -s

(pair of) swimming trunks

swimming costume

bikini

r \***Schuh**, -e

die Schuhe zum Schuster bringen

shoe

take shoes to the shoemaker / take shoes to be repaired

die Absätze erneuern lassen

r Halbschuh

r Hausschuh

r Turnschuh / r Sportschuh /

r Tennisschuh / r Fußballschuh

have a pair of shoes re-heeled shoe [as opposed to boot]

slipper

trainer / trainer / tennis shoe / football boot

r **Slipper**, -

r Schlüpf, - österr.

slip-on shoe [not slipper!]

slip-on shoe [not slipper!]

e **Sandale**, -n

r \***Stiefel**, - / r Gummistiefel

r \***Strümpf**, =e / r Kniestrumpf

e Strumpfhose, -n

e Seidenstrumpfhose, -n

e **Socke**, -n / r Socken, - südd./schweiz.

e **Schürze**, -n

r **Kjittel**, -

e Kittelschürze, -n

r **Gürtel**, -

r **Hosenträger**, -

e \***Tasche**, -n

e Handtasche

e Umhängetasche

e Hosentasche

**anprobieren** / probieren

Wo kann ich das Kleid bitte anprobieren?

sandal

boot / wellington boot

[knee-high] sock

tights

silk tights

[ankle] sock

apron

smock, overall

sleeveless overall

belt

(pair of) braces

pocket, bag

handbag

shoulder bag

trouser pocket

try on

Where can I try the dress on, please?

e **Umkleidekabine**, -n / e **Anprobe**, -n

Steht mir diese Farbe?

e \***Größe**, -n / e Konfektionsgröße, -n

Welche Größe haben Sie?

\***passen**

zu \***eng** ↔ zu \***weit**

Die Hose ist leider zu eng. Haben Sie sie noch eine Nummer größer?

fitting room, changing room

Does this colour suit me?

size

What size are you?

to fit

too tight ↔ too loose/big

I'm afraid the trousers are too

tight. Do you have them in the next size up?

zu \***groß** ↔ zu \***klein**

zu \***lang** ↔ zu \***kurz**

r **Schneider**, - // e **Schneiderin**, -nen

too big ↔ too small

too long ↔ too short

tailor / dressmaker

**\*nähen**

e Änderungsschneiderei, -en  
die Hose kürzen / kürzer machen  
den Rock enger nähen

r **\*Stoff**, -e

e **\*Wolle**

e Baumwolle

e **\*Seide**

r **\*Samt**

e **\*Kunstfaser**

s **\*Leder**

r **\*Schmuck** Sg

r **\*Ring**, - / r Ehering, -e

e **\*Halskette**, -n / e **\*Kette**, -n

s Armband, -er

e Brosche, -n

r **\*Ohrring**, -e / r Ohrstecker, -

sew

tailor's [that does alterations]

shorten the (pair of) trousers

take in the skirt

material

wool

cotton

silk

velvet

man-made fibre

leather

jewellery / jewelry

ring / wedding ring

necklace

bracelet

brooch

earring / stud earring

## Einkaufen Shopping

**\*einkaufen**

r **Einkauf**, =e

Einkäufe machen

Heute mache ich einige

Weihnachtseinkäufe.

**einkaufen gehen** (ging, ist gegangen)

Wir müssen noch einkaufen gehen.

e Einkaufstasche, -n / r Einkaufskorb, =e

r Einkaufswagen, -

s Einkaufszentrum, -zentren

einen Einkaufsbummel machen / durch  
die Stadt bummeln

go shopping, do one's shopping

shopping

to shop

I'm doing some Christmas

shopping today.

go shopping

We've still got to do some

shopping.

shopping bag / shopping basket

shopping trolley/cart

shopping centre/mall

go on a shopping spree / take a

stroll through town, go window

shopping

**Useful expressions**

*Ich suche ...*

*Haben / Führen Sie ...?*

*Wo finde ich ...?*

*Was / Wie viel kostet ...?*

*Könnten Sie es bitte als Geschenk einpacken?*

*Wo kann ich das \*umtauschen?*

*Bekomme ich das Geld zurück oder einen*

*Gutschein?*

I'm looking for ...

Do you have / stock ...?

Where can I find ...?

What / How much does ... cost?

Could I have it gift-wrapped, please?

Where can I change this?

Do I get the money back or a

voucher / credit note?



s \***Kaufhaus**, =er / s Warenhaus /  
s Möbelhaus  
Die Damenabteilung befindet sich im  
Erdgeschoss, gleich beim Eingang.

r \***Eingang**, = ↔ r \***Ausgang**, =e  
e \***Stufe**, -n  
Vorsicht Stufe!  
s **Versandhaus**, =er  
r Versandhauskatalog, -e  
etwas bei einem Versandhaus kaufen  
s **Online-Shopping** [ɔ'nlaɪn'ʃɔpɪŋ]  
s \***Geschäft**, -e / r \***Laden**, =  
s Fachgeschäft

department store / store / furniture  
store  
The ladies' department is on the  
ground floor, right at the  
entrance.  
entrance ↔ exit  
step  
Mind the step!  
mail-order firm/company  
mail-order catalogue  
buy something by mail order  
online shopping  
shop, store  
specialist shop/store



### Specialist shops & stores

s *Modegeschäft* / e *Boutique*, -n  
s *Schuhgeschäft*  
e *Buchhandlung*, -en  
s *Antiquariat*, -e  
s *Schreibwarengeschäft*  
e *Papeterie*, -n (schweiz.)  
s *Spielwarengeschäft*  
s *Möbelgeschäft*  
s *Antiquitätengeschäft*  
s *Sportgeschäft*  
s *Fotogeschäft*  
s *Elektronikgeschäft*  
s *Haushaltwarengeschäft*  
s *Zeitungsgeschäft*  
e \**Trafik*, -en (österreich.)  
s *Blumengeschäft*  
r *Juwelier*, -e  
e \**Apotheke*, -n  
e \**Drogerie*, -n / r *Drogeriemarkt*, =e

fashion store / boutique  
shoe shop  
bookshop  
secondhand bookshop  
stationer's  
stationer's  
toy store  
furniture store  
antique shop  
sports shop  
photographic shop  
electronics store  
household goods store  
newsagent's  
kiosk  
flower shop  
jeweller's  
pharmacy, chemist's  
chemist's, drugstore

### Food shops

s *Obst- und Gemüsegeschäft*  
r *Naturkostladen*, = / s *Reformhaus*, =er  
e \**Bäckerei*, -en  
e *Konditorei*, -en  
e \**Metzgerei*, -en / e *Fleischerei*, -en

greengrocer's  
health food shop  
baker's  
confectioner's  
butcher's

r \***Kiosk**, -s / r Zeitungskiosk  
r \***Supermarkt**, =e  
Ich geh' noch schnell in den Supermarkt.

kiosk  
supermarket  
I'm just going to nip into the  
supermarket.

r <b>*Markt</b> , =e	market
r Wochenmarkt / r Bauernmarkt	weekly market / farmers' market
Obst und Gemüse kaufe ich immer auf dem Markt.	I always buy my fruit and vegetables at the market.
e Markthalle, -n	covered market
e <b>Öffnungszeiten</b> , -en /	opening hours (of a shop)
<b>Ladenöffnungszeiten</b> Pl	
Das Geschäft hat <b>*geöffnet</b> ↔ <b>*geschlossen</b> .	The shop is open ↔ closed.
s <b>*Schaufenster</b> , -	shop window
e <b>*Fußgängerzone</b> , -n	pedestrian precinct
r <b>Verkäufer</b> , - // e <b>Verkäuferin</b> , -nen	shop assistant
r <b>*Kunde</b> , -n // e <b>Kundin</b> , -nen	customer
Er ist ein guter / zufriedener Kunde.	He is a good / satisfied customer.
kundenfreundlich	customer-friendly
r <b>Kundendienst</b>	(customer) service, service department
	customer service
e Kundenbetreuung	customer service
Sie erreichen unseren Kundenservice werktags von 9 bis 18 Uhr.	You can contact our customer service department any workday between 9am and 6pm.
s <b>*Angebot</b> , -e	offer
Das ist ein günstiges Angebot.	That's a very good / reasonable offer.
ein Angebot <b>*nützen / nutzen</b>	take advantage of an offer
Das nützt mir nichts.	That won't help me.
s <b>*Sonderangebot</b> , -e	special offer
jn <b>*aufmerksam machen</b> auf +A	draw sb's attention to sth
„Darf ich Sie auf unser Sonderangebot aufmerksam machen?“	“May I draw your attention to our special offer?“
<b>*teuer</b> ↔ <b>günstig</b> / <b>*billig</b> / <b>*preiswert</b>	expensive ↔ cheap, good value
Das war ein Schnäppchen.	That was a bargain.
r <b>Sommerschlussverkauf</b> /	summer sale(s) / winter sale(s)
r <b>Winterschlussverkauf</b>	
r Ausverkauf <i>schweiz.</i>	sale(s)
r Totalausverkauf <i>schweiz.</i>	clearance sale
r <b>Räumungsverkauf</b>	clearance sale
Das habe ich sehr günstig bei einem Räumungsverkauf bekommen.	I got that very cheap in a clearance sale.
r <b>Flohmarkt</b> , =e	flea market
r Secondhandladen, = [ˈzɛknthent...]	secondhand shop
<b>*sparen</b>	save
Im Sommerschlussverkauf können Sie bis zu 40 Prozent sparen.	You can save up to 40% in the summer sale(s).
e <b>*Rechnung</b> , -en	bill
Können Sie mir bitte eine Rechnung ausstellen?	Could you make me out a bill?
e <b>*Kasse</b> , -n / e <b>*Kassa</b> <i>österr.</i>	cash desk

e \***Quittung**, -en

Hier ist Ihre Quittung.

\***zahlen** / \***bezahlen**

Zahlen Sie bar oder mit Karte?

e EC-Karte, -n / e Kreditkarte, -n

e \***Tüte**, -n / s \***Sackerl**, - *österr.*

e **Barzahlung**, -en

Sie bekommen bei Barzahlung 2% Skonto.

e **Anzahlung**, -en

Sie müssten bitte eine Anzahlung von 50 Euro leisten.

\***ausreichen**

„Ich möchte ja bezahlen, aber mein Geld reicht nicht aus.“

e **Rate**, -n

Wir haben das Auto auf Raten gekauft.

e Ratenzahlung

eine monatliche Ratenzahlung in Höhe von 100 Euro

e **Lieferung**, -en

\***liefern**

Ab einem Betrag von 50 Euro liefern wir frei Haus.

e \***Marke**, -n

e Markenkleidung

r **Gutschein**, -e

r Bon, -s [bɔŋ] *schweiz.*

e **Reklamation**, -en

r **Umtausch** Sg

Sie können die Ware nur mit dem Kassenbon umtauschen.

receipt

Here's your receipt.

to pay

Are you paying cash or credit?

EC card / credit card

bag, paperbag

cash payment

You get a 2% discount if you pay cash.

deposit, down payment

I have to ask you for a down payment of 50 euros, please.

be sufficient / enough

“I'd like to pay, but I haven't got enough money.”

installment

We bought the car on hire purchase / the installment plan.

payment by instalments, hire-purchase / installment-plan

payment

a monthly hire-purchase / installment-plan payment of 100 euros

delivery

deliver

Delivery is free of charge on amounts over 50 euros.

brand

recognized brand of clothing

voucher, credit note

voucher, credit note

complaint

exchange

To exchange the goods you must have the original receipt.

**5.1 Wohnen**  
**How people live**

**5.2 Einrichtung**  
**Furnishings**

**5.3 Hausarbeit**  
**Housework**

**5.4 Kochen**  
**Cooking**

# 5

**Zu Hause**  
**At home**

# Wohnen

## How people live

r <b>Wohnort</b> , -e	place of residence
* <b>wohnen</b>	live
Wo wohnen Sie? – In Frankfurt. / In der Bahnhofstraße.	Where do you live? – In Frankfurt. / In Bahnhofstraße.
* <b>leben</b>	live
Ich lebe seit einem Jahr in Deutschland.	I have been living in Germany for a year.
e * <b>Stadt</b> , -e	town
städtisch	urban
e <b>Metropole</b> , -n	metropolis
s * <b>Zentrum</b> , Zentren	centre
Wir wohnen im Zentrum von Zürich.	We live in the centre of Zurich.
* <b>zentral</b>	central
Ich suche eine Wohnung in zentraler Lage.	I'm looking for a flat in a central location.
e * <b>Innenstadt</b> , -e	town/city centre
r * <b>Vorort</b> , -e	suburb
Sie wohnt in einem Vorort von Wien.	She lives in a suburb of Vienna.
r <b>Stadttrand</b>	outskirts
Sie wohnt am Stadtrand von Zürich.	She lives on the outskirts of Zurich.
s * <b>Dorf</b> , -er	village
dörflich	rural, village ...
auf dem Land ↔ in der Stadt	in the country ↔ in town / in the city
Wir wohnen lieber auf dem Land als in der Stadt.	We prefer living in the country to living in town.
e * <b>Wohnung</b> , -en	flat / apartment
Wir haben eine Drei-Zimmer-Wohnung mit Balkon.	We have a three-room flat with a balcony.
Er hat eine <b>Zweitwohnung</b> in Berlin.	He has a flat in Berlin as a second home.
s <b>Apartment</b> , -s [a'pɑ:tmənt]	small studio / flat



In Germany, Austria and Switzerland the number of reception rooms and bedrooms is added together to give the flat (*Wohnung*) size. So a three-room flat would consist, for example, of a living room, a bedroom, and a study or child's (bed)room. A kitchen and bathroom are standard.

The term **Apartment** nearly always indicates a one-room studio or bedsitter, with a small kitchen or kitchenette and a bathroom.

e Eigentumswohnung, -en ↔	owner-occupied flat ↔ rented flat
e Mietwohnung, -en	
e Dachterrassenwohnung /	penthouse
s Penthouse [ˈpɛntəʊs]	



e Sozialwohnung	council house / flat, municipal housing unit
s Eigenheim, -e	home of own's own, (owner-occupied) house
s * <b>Erdgeschoss</b> / s * <b>Parterre</b> [par'ter(ə)]	ground floor
e <b>Etage</b> , -n [e'ta:ʒə] / r * <b>Stöck</b> / s * <b>Stöckwerk</b> , -e	storey, floor
s <b>Souterrain</b> [zute'rē: auch 'zu:terē:]	basement
s Untergeschoss <i>schweiz.</i>	basement
r * <b>Keller</b> , -	cellar
* <b>liegen</b> (lag, hat gelegen)	be (situated / located)
Meine Wohnung <b>liegt</b> im 3. Stock / in der 3. Etage / im Erdgeschoss / im Parterre.	My flat is on the 3 <sup>rd</sup> floor / on the ground floor.
r * <b>Balkon</b> , -s/-e	balcony
e * <b>Terrasse</b> , -n	patio, terrace
s * <b>Gebäude</b> , -	building
s * <b>Haus</b> , -er	house

### Buildings

s Bürogebäude, - / s Bürohaus	office block
s Wohnhaus	residential building
s Einfamilienhaus	detached house
s Mehrfamilienhaus	large house with several flats
s Reihenhaushaus	terraced / row house
s Doppelhaus	semi-detached house
s Bauernhaus	farmhouse
s Fertighaus	prefab
r Bungalow, -s	bungalow
e Villa, Villen	villa
s Landhaus / s Haus am Land	country house / house in the country
e Hütte, -n / e Holzhütte, -n	cabin / log cabin
s Hochhaus	high-rise (building)
r Wolkenkratzer, -	skyscraper



Wo liegt euer Haus? – Am Stadtrand. / In einem Vorort. / Am Land. / Am See. / In den Bergen.	Where is your house? – On the outskirts of town. / In a suburb. / In the country. / By the lake. / In the mountains.
ein Haus mit Garten / mit Seeblick	a house with a garden / view of the lake
r * <b>Wohnblock</b> , -e	block of flats / apartment building
* <b>mieten</b> ↔ * <b>vermieten</b>	to rent ↔ rent / let out
e * <b>Miete</b> , -n	rent, lease, hire
r <b>Mieter</b> , - // e <b>Mieterin</b> , -nen	tenant
r * <b>Vermieter</b> , - // e <b>Vermieterin</b> , -nen	landlord / landlady
r Untermieter, - // e Untermieterin, -nen	subtenant
ein möbliertes Zimmer in Untermiete	lodgings

Jahrelang habe ich zur Untermiete gewohnt.

e Wohngemeinschaft, -en / e WG, -s

r \***Makler**, - // e **Maklerin**, -nen

e **Vermittlungsgebühr**, -en / e **Provision**, -nen

r **Kaufvertrag**, =e

r Vorvertrag, =e

r Kaufpreis, -e

r Quadratmeterpreis, -e

r Notar, -e

r **Mietvertrag**, =e

einen Mietvertrag / Kaufvertrag abschließen / unterschreiben

r \***Nachbar**, -n // e **Nachbarin**, -nen

r **Hausbewohner**, -

r **Mitbewohner**, - //

e **Mitbewohnerin**, -nen

r \***Hausmeister**, - //

e Hausmeisterin, -nen

r Abwart, -e // e Abwärtin, -nen *schweiz.*

e Kaution

\***einziehen** ↔ \***ausziehen** (zog aus, ist ausgezogen)

\***umziehen**

übersiedeln *österr.*

r **Umzug**, =e

e Übersiedlung, -en *österr.*

For years I lived in lodgings.

flat-share, house-share  
estate agent / realtor  
commission

contract of sale  
preliminary / provisional  
agreement  
purchase price  
price per square metre  
solicitor  
lease, tenancy agreement  
enter into / sign a rental  
agreement / contract of sale  
neighbour  
occupant / tenant of a house /  
building  
other / fellow occupant

caretaker / concierge / janitor

caretaker / concierge / janitor  
deposit

move in ↔ out

to move

to move

removal, move

removal, move



### Rooms in a house

s \***Zimmer**, - / r \***Raum**, =e

s **Wohnzimmer**

s **Schlafzimmer**

s **Kinderzimmer**

s **Esszimmer**

s **Arbeitszimmer**

s **Gästezimmer**

e \***Küche**, -n

e **Wohnküche**

s \***Bad**, =er / s **Badezimmer**

e **Speisekammer**, -n

r **Abstellraum**, =e

r **Flur**, -e / r \***Gang**, =e /

r **Korridor**, -e / e **Diele**, -n

e **Eingangshalle**

room

living room

bedroom

child's (bed)room

dining room

study

guest room

kitchen

kitchen-cum-living room

bathroom

larder

storage room

hall

[large] entrance hall

r Hausflur	[smaller] entrance hall
e *Treppe, -n	stairs, staircase
e *Stiege, -n (österr.)	stairs, staircase
s Treppenhaus	stairwell, staircase
s Stiegenhaus (österr.)	stairwell, staircase
r *Keller, - / r Kellerraum	cellar
r Speicher / r Dachboden	[storage] loft, attic
e Mansarde	attic [room]
s Mansardenzimmer	attic room
e Waschküche / r Waschraum	laundry room
r Hobbyraum	hobby room

### Rooms outside the house

r Schuppen, -	shed
r Geräteschuppen	toolshed
e Scheune, -n	barn
e Hundehütte	kennel
s Gewächshaus	greenhouse
r Pferdestall, =e	stable
r Hühnerstall, =e	chicken-coop
r Schweinestall, =e	pigsty
r Kuhstall, =e	cowshed
r Carport ['ka:ɪpɔ:ɐt]	carport
r Fahrradabstellraum	bike shed, room for storing bikes
s Gartenhaus, =er	summer house
e Laube, -n	summer house, bower, arbo(u)r

s <b>Quartier</b> , -e / e * <b>Unterkunft</b>	accommodation, place to stay
s Notquartier / e Notunterkunft	emergency accommodation
r <b>Wohnwagen</b> , -/ =	caravan / trailer
s <b>Wohnmobil</b> , -e	mobile home / house trailer
s <b>Hausboot</b> , -e	houseboat
s * <b>Zelt</b> , -e	tent
e * <b>Tür</b> , -en	door
Es ist jemand an der Tür.	There's someone at the door.
die Tür * <b>aufmachen</b> / * <b>öffnen</b> ↔	open ↔ close / shut the door
* <b>zumachen</b> / * <b>schließen</b> (schloss, hat geschlossen)	
die Tür * <b>abschließen</b> / zuschließen / absperren <i>österr.</i>	lock the door
e Haustür / e Hintertür / e Eingangstür / e Wohnungstür / e Zimmertür / e Terrassentür / e Drehtür / e Schiebetür	front door / back door / (entrance / front) door / door of a flat / door of a room / patio door / revolving door / sliding door
e * <b>Türklinke</b>	door handle
e Türschnalle <i>österr.</i>	door handle
s * <b>Schloß</b> / s Türschloß	lock / door lock

r \***Schlüssel**, -  
 r Haus- / Wohnungs- / Zweit- /  
 Garagenschlüssel  
 den **Schlüsseldienst** rufen  
 einen Schlüssel nachmachen lassen  
 s Sicherheitsschloss, =er  
 e \***Klingel**, -n  
 e Glocke, -n *österreich.*  
 e Hausglocke, -n *Schweiz.*  
 \***klingeln**  
 läuten *österreich./Schweiz.*  
 Hat es gerade geklingelt?  
 e **Sprechanlage**, -n /  
 e Gegensprechanlage, -n  
 s \***Fenster**, -  
 das Fenster aufmachen ↔ zumachen  
 das Fenster kippen  
 Es zieht. Mach bitte das Fenster zu!

key  
 house / flat / spare / garage key  
 call the locksmith service  
 have a spare key made  
 security lock  
 bell  
 bell  
 bell  
 ring the bell  
 ring the bell  
 Was that the doorbell?  
 intercom  
 window  
 open ↔ close / shut the window  
 open the [horizontally pivoted]  
 window, tilt the window  
 There's a draught. Please shut the  
 window.



### A house from the outside

e \***Mauer**, -n  
 r **Zaun**, =e  
 s **Gartentor**, -e  
 r \***Briefkasten**, =  
 e **Eingangstür**, -en  
 r **Fensterladen**, =  
 r **Rollladen**, = / e **Jalousie** [ʒalu'zi:],  
**Jalousien** [...'zi:ən]  
 r **Blumenkasten**, =  
 r **Balkon**, -e  
 e **Terrasse**, -n  
 e \***Garage**, -n [qa'ra:ʒə]  
 s \***Dach**, =er  
 r **Dachziegel**, -  
 r **Schornstein**, -e  
 r **Rauchfang**, =e / r **Kamin**, -e  
 e **Antenne**, -n  
 e **Satellitenschüssel**, -n  
 e **Regenrinne**, -n / e **Dachrinne**

wall  
 fence  
 garden gate  
 letterbox  
 front door, entrance door  
 shutter  
 shutter, blind  
 flower-box, window-box  
 balcony  
 patio / terrace  
 garage  
 roof  
 (roofing) tile  
 chimney  
 chimney  
 aerial  
 satellite dish  
 gutter

e \***Klimaanlage**, -n  
 \***heizen**  
 e **Heizung**, -en  
 e Zentralheizung

air conditioning  
 to have / put the heating on  
 heating  
 central heating

r **\*Ofen**, =  
 e Ölheizung / e Gasheizung /  
 e Ofenheizung  
 r **Heizkörper**, -  
 s Thermostat, -e  
 r **\*Strom** Sg  
 r Stromzähler, -  
 den Stromzähler ablesen  
 r **Warmwasserboiler**, -  
 \***warm** (wärmer, wärmst-) ↔  
 \***kalt** (kälter, kältest-)  
 e **\*Wärme** ↔ e **\*Kälte**  
 \***frieren** (fror, hat gefroren)  
 r **\*Aufzug**, =e / r **\*Lift**, -e  
 r **\*Hof**, =e  
 r Hinterhof  
 Die Kinder spielen im Hof.

stove  
 oil-fired heating / gas-fired  
 heating / heating by stoves  
 radiator  
 thermostat  
 electricity  
 electricity meter  
 read the electricity meter  
 hot-water heater  
 warm/hot ↔ cold  
 warmth ↔ cold  
 freeze  
 lift, elevator  
 (court)yard  
 backyard  
 The children are playing in the  
 (court)yard.

## Einrichtung Furnishings

\***einrichten**  
 e **Einrichtung** Sg  
 \***Möbel** Pl  
 möbliert  
 \***anschaffen**  
 Beim Umzug haben wir uns neue Möbel  
 angeschafft.  
 s Möbelhaus, =er  
 s Einrichtungshaus, =er  
 \***gemütlich**  
 Ihre Wohnung ist sehr gemütlich /  
 sehr elegant / sehr geschmackvoll  
 eingerichtet / sehr einfach möbliert.  
**altmodisch** ↔ **\*modern** / zeitgemäß  
 r **Fußboden**, =  
 r **\*Teppich**, -e  
 r Teppichboden, =  
 den Teppichboden verlegen  
 das Parkett verlegen  
 e **\*Decke**, -n  
 r Plafond, -s *österr.*  
 e **\*Wand**, =e  
 e **Tapete**, -n  
 s **\*Bild**, -er

furnish  
 (fittings and) furnishings  
 furniture.  
 furnished  
 to buy  
 When we moved, we bought new  
 furniture.  
 furniture store  
 furniture store  
 comfortable, cosy  
 Their flat is very cosy / very  
 elegant / very tastefully  
 furnished / very simply furnished.  
 old-fashioned ↔ modern /  
 up-to-date  
 floor  
 carpet  
 fitted carpet  
 lay the carpet  
 lay parquet flooring  
 ceiling  
 ceiling  
 wall  
 wallpaper  
 picture

Wir müssen noch die Bilder und die Deckenlampe aufhängen.

- r \***Schrank**, =e  
 r Kasten, = *österr./schweiz.*  
 r Einbauschränk  
 r Kleiderschrank  
 r \***Haken**, - / r Kleiderhaken, -  
 e **Kommode**, -n  
 e **Schublade**, -n  
 \***öffnen** / \***aufmachen** ↔ \***schließen**  
 (schloss, hat geschlossen) / \***zumachen**  
 s \***Bett**, -en

We still have to hang up the pictures and the ceiling lamp.  
 cupboard / closet  
 cupboard / closet  
 built-in / fitted cupboard / closet  
 wardrobe  
 hook / coat hook  
 chest of drawers  
 drawer  
 open ↔ close/shut  
 bed



s *Doppelbett*  
 s *Kinderbett*  
 e *Wiege*, -n  
 s *Schlafsofa*, -s  
 e *Schlafcouch*, -s/-en  
 e *Matratze*, -n  
 s \**Kissen*, - / s *Polster*, - (*österr.*)  
 s *Kopfkissen*, -  
 e \**Decke*, -n / e *Bettdecke*, -n  
 s *Federbett* / s *Daunenbett*  
 s *Bettlaken*, -  
 s *Leintuch*, =er (*österr.*)  
 r *Bezug*, =e  
 r *Überzug*, =e (*österr.*)

double bed  
 cot, child's bed  
 cradle  
 sofa bed  
 sofa bed, studio couch  
 mattress  
 pillow  
 pillow (for the head)  
 blanket, duvet, quilt, eiderdown  
 duvet  
 sheet  
 sheet  
 (duvet) cover  
 (duvet) cover

- s \***Regal**, -e  
 s Bücherregal / r Bücherschrank  
 e Regalwand  
 s **Büfett**, -s [by'fe:] /  
 s **Sideboard**, -s ['saitbo:gt]  
 r \***Tisch**, -e  
 den Tisch **decken** ↔ **abräumen**  
 tischen ↔ abtischen *schweiz.*  
 e Serviette, -n

shelf, shelves  
 bookcase  
 wall lined with shelf units  
 sideboard  
 table  
 lay ↔ clear the table  
 lay ↔ clear the table  
 napkin, serviette



r *Esstisch*  
 r *Küchentisch*  
 r *Couchtisch*  
 r *Beistelltisch*  
 r *Nachttisch*  
 r \**Schreibtisch*  
 r *Arbeitstisch*  
 r *Klapptisch*  
 r *Gartentisch*  
 e *Tischdecke*, -n

dining table  
 kitchen table  
 coffee table  
 occasional / side table  
 bedside table  
 (writing) desk  
 work-table, bench, desk  
 folding table  
 garden table  
 tablecloth

s **\*Sofa**, -s / e **\*Couch**, -s/-en [kautʃ]  
Setz dich doch zu mir aufs Sofa.

r **\*Sessel**, -  
r Fauteuil, -s [fo'tø:ʃ] *österreich./schweiz.*  
Setzen Sie sich doch dort in den Sessel.

r **\*Stuhl**, =e  
**\*bequem** ↔ unbequem  
r Sessel, - *österreich.*  
r Schaukelstuhl  
r Liegestuhl  
r **\*Hocker**, -  
e **\*Bank**, =e / e **Sitzbank**  
r Sitz, -e  
**\*sitzen** (saß, ist/hat gegessen)  
sich (hin) **\*setzen** ↔ **\*aufstehen** (stand  
auf, ist aufgestanden)  
Setzen Sie sich doch bitte. / Bitte nehmen  
Sie Platz.

s **Badezimmer**, - / s **\*Bad**, =er  
e **\*Toilette**, -n / s **\*Klo**, -s *ugs.*

Wo ist bitte die Toilette?

e **\*Badewanne**, -n

**\*baden**

e **\*Dusche**, -n

Sie ist gerade in / unter der Dusche.

(sich) **\*duschen**

Ich dusche noch schnell. Dann können  
wir gehen.

s **Washbecken**, -

s Lavabo, -s *schweiz.*

r **Badezimmerschrank**

r **Wasserhahn**, =e

den Wasserhahn aufdrehen ↔ abdrehen

Der Wasserhahn tropft.

s **Spülbecken**, - / e **Spüle**, -n

e Abwasch, -en *österreich.*

e **Ablage**, -n

sofa, couch, settee  
Come and sit next to me on the  
sofa.

armchair  
armchair  
Have a seat over there in the  
armchair.

chair  
comfortable ↔ uncomfortable

chair  
rocking chair

deckchair

stool

bench

seat

sit

sit down ↔ stand up

Please sit down / have a seat.

bathroom

toilet, lavatory / loo

Where's the toilet, please?

bath(tub)

to bath(e)

shower

She's in the shower just now.

(have a) shower

I'll just have a quick shower. Then  
we can go.

washbasin / (bathroom) sink

washbasin / (bathroom) sink

bathroom cabinet

tap / faucet

turn the tap/faucet on ↔ off

The tap's dripping.

(kitchen) sink

(kitchen) sink

draining board

### Küchen- und Haushaltsgeräte

r **\*Kühlschrank**

r Eiskasten, = (österreich.)

r Gefrierschrank / e Tiefkühltruhe, -n

e Geschirrspülmaschine, -n /

e Spülmaschine / r Geschirrspüler

### Kitchen equipment and electrical appliances

fridge

fridge

[upright] freezer / freezer [chest]

dishwasher



e Waschmaschine  
r Wäschetrockner, - / r Trockner, -  
r Staubsauger, -  
r Herd, -e  
e Küchenmaschine  
r Toaster, -  
e Brotschneidemaschine, -n  
e Mikrowelle, -n  
e Saftpresse, -n  
e Kaffeemaschine, -n  
r Mixer, -

washing machine  
tumble-dryer / dryer  
vacuum cleaner  
stove  
food processor  
toaster  
bread slicer  
microwave  
juice extractor  
coffee-maker  
blender, mixer

e * <b>Lampe</b> , -n	lamp
e Stehlampe	standard / floor lamp
e Nachttischlampe	bedside lamp
r Lampenschirm, -e	lampshade
das Licht / die Lampe <b>anzmachen</b> ↔	switch the light / lamp on ↔ off
* <b>ausmachen</b>	
das Licht / die Lampe * <b>einschalten</b> ↔	switch the light / lamp on ↔ off
* <b>ausschalten</b>	
das Licht / die Lampe aufdrehen ↔	switch the light / lamp on ↔ off
abdrehen <i>österreich.</i>	
das Licht / die Lampe anzünden ↔	switch the light / lamp on ↔ off
ablöschen <i>schweiz.</i>	
e * <b>Steckdose</b> , -n	(power) point, (electric) socket
r Lichtschalter, -	light switch
e * <b>Uhr</b> , -en	clock
e Wanduhr / e Standuhr	wall clock / grandfather clock
r * <b>Wecker</b> , -	alarm clock
r * <b>Spiegel</b> , -	mirror
r * <b>Vorhang</b> , =e / e <b>Gardine</b> , -n	curtain, drape
r Store, -s <i>österreich.</i>	curtain, drape
die Vorhänge aufziehen ↔ zuziehen	open ↔ draw the curtains
r <b>Papierkorb</b> , =e	wastepaper basket / wastebasket
r * <b>Mülleimer</b> , - / r <b>Abfalleimer</b>	rubbish/waste bin, garbage can
r Mistkübel, - <i>österreich.</i>	rubbish/waste bin, garbage can
r (Abfall-) Kübel, - <i>schweiz.</i>	rubbish/waste bin, garbage can
e <b>Mülltonne</b> , -n	dustbin / ashcan / garbage container
r Abfallcontainer, - <i>schweiz.</i>	dustbin / ashcan / garbage container
Bring bitte den Müll runter. Heute wird die Mülltonne geleert.	Take the rubbish/trash down, will you. It's collection day today.
e Mülltrennung	separation of waste / garbage
s Recycling [ri'saɪklɪŋ]	recycling
r Plastikmüll / r Biomüll / s Altpapier	plastic waste / organic waste / waste paper



# Hausarbeit

## Housework

### e **Hausarbeit**

die Hausarbeit machen / erledigen

r \***Haushalt**, -e

Sie führt einen großen Haushalt.

e Haushälterin, -nen

e \***Hausfrau**, -en // r **Hausmann**, -er

r \***perfekte** Hausmann

e **Reinigungsfrau**, -en

s Reinigungspersonal Sg

\***aufräumen**

Räum bitte dein Zimmer auf!

**fegen / kehren**

kehren *österreich.*

r **Besen**, -

housework

do the housework

household, housekeeping

She keeps house for a large family / a lot of people.

housekeeper

housewife / househusband

perfect househusband

cleaner, cleaning woman

cleaning staff

clear / tidy up

Please tidy up your room.

sweep

sweep

broom

*Neue Besen kehren gut.*

*Ich fress einen Besen, wenn das nicht stimmt.*

A new broom sweeps clean.

I'll eat my hat if that's true.



r **Staubsauger**, -

**Staub saugen**

Wir sollten mal wieder **staubsaugen**.

**Täppiche (aus)\*klöpfen**

\***putzen** / \***sauber machen**

die Fenster putzen

die Küche gründlich sauber machen

Bitte putz dein Zimmer \***ordentlich**.

**wischen**

den Boden wischen

\***waschen** (wäscht, wusch, hat gewaschen)

einen Pullover von Hand waschen

Die Tischdecke müsste mal wieder gewaschen werden.

Die Flecken sind (beim Waschen) leider nicht rausgegangen.

e \***Wäsche** Sg

Wo ist meine schwarze Hose? – In der Wäsche.

die Wäsche **waschen** / \***spülen** / **schleudern**

die Wäsche waschen / schwemmen / schleudern *österreich.*

vacuum cleaner

to vacuum(-clean)

It's time we did some vacuuming.

beat carpets

clean

clean the windows

give the kitchen a good clean

Please clean your room properly.

wipe

wipe the floor (with a damp cloth)

wash

wash a pullover by hand

The tablecloth needs washing.

I'm afraid the stains didn't wash out.

washing

Where are my black trousers? – In the wash.

wash / rinse / spin-dry the washing

wash / rinse / spin-dry the washing

**\*trocknen**

Im Sommer trocknet die Wäsche schnell.

die Wäsche **aufhängen** (hing auf, hat aufgehangen) ↔ **\*abnehmen** (nimmt ab, nahm ab, hat abgenommen)

to dry

In summer the wash(ing) dries quickly.

hang up ↔ take down the washing

**Cleaning equipment**

*r Lappen, - / r Putzlappen / r Wischlappen*

*s \*Tuch, =er / s Wischtuch / s Putztuch*

*r Schwamm, =e*

*e Spülbürste, -n*

*s Spülmittel, -*

*s Geschirrtuch*

*s Fensterleder*

*s Staubtuch*

*r Besen, -*

*r Bartwisch, -e (österr.)*

*e Schaufel, -n*

*r Staubsauger, -*

*s Waschpulver / s \*Waschmittel*

*s Putzmittel, -*

cloth, rag / cleaning rag,

cloth / (floor) cloth

cloth / (floor) cloth / cloth

sponge

washing-up brush

washing-up liquid

tea towel, drying-up cloth

(wash-)leather

duster

brush, broom

(hand)brush

dustpan

vacuum cleaner

washing powder / detergent

cleaning agent

**bügeln**

die Hemden bügeln

**aufwischen**

Wenn du etwas verschüttet, könntest du es bitte auch aufwischen.

Geschirr **spülen** / **\*abwaschen**

das Geschirr **\*abtrocknen**

die **Spülmaschine** einräumen ↔ ausräumen

Eine Spülmaschine ist sehr **\*nützlich**.

Man spart damit viel Zeit.

r **Staub**

**Staub wischen**

Es ist nicht **\*notwendig**, jeden Tag Staub zu wischen.

**abstauben**

Das Bücherregal müsste mal abgestaubt werden.

e **Kleiderbürste**, -n

**abbürsten**

Er bürstete sich die Fusseln vom Mantel (ab).

iron, do the ironing

iron the shirts

mop/wipe up

If you spill something, could you please mop it up.

do the dishes / wash up, do the washing up

dry up, dry the dishes

load ↔ unload the dishwasher

A dishwasher is very useful. It saves you a lot of time.

dust

to dust

It's not necessary to dust every day.

to dust

The bookcase needs dusting.

clothes brush

brush (off)

He brushed the fluff off his coat.

# Kochen

## Cooking

### \***kochen**

e \***Küche**, -n

die gutbürgerliche / einfache / schnelle / französische Küche

r **Koch**, =e // e **Köchin**, -nen

Sie ist eine hervorragende Köchin.

s **Kochbuch**, =er

s \***Rezept**, -e

nach Rezept kochen

r **Herd**, -e / r Elektroherd /

r Gasherd

r **Backofen**, =

e **Mikrowelle**, -n /

s **Mikrowellengerät**, -e

r \***Topf**, =e / r Kochtopf, =e

r Topfdeckel, -

r Griff, -e

r **Schnellkochtopf**

r **Wok**, -s

e \***Pfanne**, -n / e **Bratpfanne**, -n

\***braten**

ein Steak braten

r Schweine-, Rinder-, Kalbsbraten, -

kurz anbraten

to cook

cooking, cuisine

good plain cooking / plain/simple food / quick dishes / French cuisine

cook, chef

She's an excellent cook.

cookery book, cookbook

recipe

follow a recipe (when you cook)

stove / electric stove / gas stove

oven

microwave / microwave oven

pot, sauepan

(saucepan) lid

handle

pressure cooker

wok

frying pan

fry, roast

fry a steak

roast pork, beef, veal

brown, sear

*braten*

*dünsten*

*garen*

*frittieren*

*grillen*

*schmoren*

*dämpfen*

fry, roast

steam, braise [meat], stew [fruit]

cook [slowly], simmer

deep-fry

grill

braise

steam



das Essen **aufwärmen**

\***Pudding** kochen

Die Milch kurz **aufkochen** lassen und dann das Puddingpulver **einrühren**.

s **Hähnchen**, - / s **Brathähnchen**, -

\***roh** ↔ \***gar** / **gekocht**

Wie möchten Sie das Steak: englisch, medium oder medium well / durch gebraten?

heat up food

make pudding

Bring the milk to the boil and then stir in the blancmange powder.

chicken / roast chicken

raw ↔ cooked

How would you like your steak:

rare, medium or well-done?

\***weich** ↔ \***hart**

ein weiches ↔ hartes Ei

s **Spiegelei**, -ers **Rührei**, -er\***schneiden**e **Scheibe**, -n

(das Brot) in Scheiben schneiden

das Gemüse \***putzen**die Kartoffeln **schälen**den Salat **anmachen**das Schnitzel **panieren****rühren** / umrühren

soft ↔ hard

a soft ↔ hard-boiled egg

fried egg

scrambled egg

cut

slice

slice (the bread)

clean the vegetables

peel the potatoes

dress the salad

bread the schnitzel

stir

**Kitchen idioms** (coll.)*Er hat mich in die Pfanne gehauen.*

He landed me in trouble / took me to pieces.

*Ich koch' sie schon noch weich.*

I'll bring her round / soften her up.

*Sie machen \*Hackfleisch aus ihm.*

They'll make mincemeat of him.

*Lass ihn ruhig in seinem \*Saft schmoren.*

Let him stew in his own juice.

r \***Kuchen**, -

e Kuchenform, -en

einen Kuchen \***bäcken**r **Teig**, -e

den Teig anrühren / kneten

cake

baking tin

bake a cake

pastry, dough, mixture

mix the ingredients (for the

pastry/dough/mixture) / knead the dough

den Hefeteig gehen lassen

e **Torte**, -ndie Torte **garnieren**die Sahne \***schlagen**\***Kaffee** [auch ka'fe:] machen / kochenr **Toaster**, -**toasten**

s Toastbrot, -e

s \***Besteck**

s Salatbesteck

r \***Löffel**, -

r Suppenlöffel, -

r Kaffeelöffel, -

r Schöpflöffel, -

s \***Messer**, -\***schärf** ↔ **stumpf**e \***Gabel**, -n

e Kuchengabel, -n

let the yeast dough rise

gateau

decorate the gateau

whip the cream

make coffee

toaster

to toast

toast

cutlery

salad-servers

spoon

soup spoon

teaspoon

ladle

knife

sharp ↔ blunt

fork

cake fork



r *Schneebesen*, -  
 r *Kochlöffel*, -  
 r *Kartoffelschäler*, -  
 r *Dosenöffner*, -  
 r *Hobel*, -  
 s *Sieb*, -e

whisk  
 wooden spoon  
 potato peeler  
 tin/can opener  
 slicer  
 sieve, strainer, colander

r \***Teller**, -  
 flache ↔ tiefe Teller  
 r Suppenteller  
 r Kuchenteller  
 e \***Tasse**, -n  
 e Untertasse  
 s \***Glas**, -er  
 s Weinglas / Sektglas / Wasserglas

plate  
 dinner ↔ soup plate  
 soup plate  
 cake-plate  
 cup  
 saucer  
 glass  
 wine / sparkling wine,  
 champagne / water glass

s Marmeladenglas  
 s **Gefäß**, -e  
 e **Schale**, -n  
 e **Schüssel**, -n  
 e Salatschüssel / Suppenschüssel  
 e \***Dose**, -n  
 Tomaten in der Dose  
 r \***Messbecher**, -  
 s **Schneidebrett**, -er  
 e **Waage**, -n  
 \***wiegen** / abwiegen  
 s **Tablett**, -s

jam jar  
 container, receptacle  
 bowl, dish  
 bowl, dish  
 salad bowl / soup bowl  
 tin, can  
 canned tomatoes  
 measuring cup/jug  
 cutting board  
 scales  
 weigh / weigh out  
 tray